2018

ATS/ATS-V

cadillac.com (U.S.)
cadillac.ca (Canada)

Contents

Introduction 2
In Brief 5
Keys, Doors, and Windows 30
Seats and Restraints 54
Storage 107
Instruments and Controls 110
Lighting 149
Infotainment System 157
Climate Controls 163
Driving and Operating 174
Vehicle Care 250
Service and Maintenance 334
Technical Data 349
Customer Information 354
Reporting Safety Defects 364
OnStar 368
Index 379

Introduction

The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to, GM, the GM logo, the CADILLAC Emblem, and CADILLAC ATS are trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name “General Motors of Canada Company” for Cadillac Motor Car Division wherever it appears in this manual.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on the vehicle because of optional equipment that was not purchased on the vehicle, model variants, country specifications, features/applications that may not be available in your region, or changes subsequent to the printing of this owner’s manual.

Refer to the purchase documentation relating to your specific vehicle to confirm the features.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

Canadian Vehicle Owners

A French language manual can be obtained from your dealer, at www.helminc.com, or from:

Propriétaires Canadiens

On peut obtenir un exemplaire de ce guide en français auprès du concessionnaire ou à l'adresse suivante:

Helm, Incorporated
Attention: Customer Service
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, MI 48170
USA

Using this Manual

To quickly locate information about the vehicle, use the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 23396040 B Second Printing

©2017 General Motors LLC. All Rights Reserved.

Danger, Warning, and Caution

Warning messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce them.

⚠ Danger

Danger indicates a hazard with a high level of risk which will result in serious injury or death.

⚠ Warning

Warning indicates a hazard that could result in injury or death.

Caution

Caution indicates a hazard that could result in property or vehicle damage.

A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do Not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gauge, or indicator.

: Shown when the owner’s manual has additional instructions or information.

: Shown when the service manual has additional instructions or information.

: Shown when there is more information on another page — “see page.”

Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. See the features in this manual for information.

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Air Conditioning

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

: Brake System Warning Light

: Charging System

: Cruise Control

: Do Not Puncture

: Do Not Service

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Exterior Lamps

: Flame/Fire Prohibited

: Fuel Gauge

: Fuses

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: ISOFIX/LATCH System Child Restraints

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Power

: Remote Vehicle Start

: Seat Belt Reminders

: Tire Pressure Monitor

: Traction Control/StabiliTrak

: Under Pressure

: Windshield Washer Fluid

In Brief

Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview 6

Initial Drive Information

Initial Drive Information 8
Stop/Start System 8
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 8
Remote Vehicle Start 9
Door Locks 9
Trunk 10
Windows 10
Seat Adjustment 11
Memory Features 14
Second Row Seats 14
Heated Seats 14
Head Restraint Adjustment 15
Seat Belts 15
Passenger Sensing System 16
Mirror Adjustment 16
Steering Wheel Adjustment 17
Interior Lighting 17
Exterior Lighting 18
Windshield Wiper/Washer 19
Climate Controls 19
Transmission 21

Vehicle Features

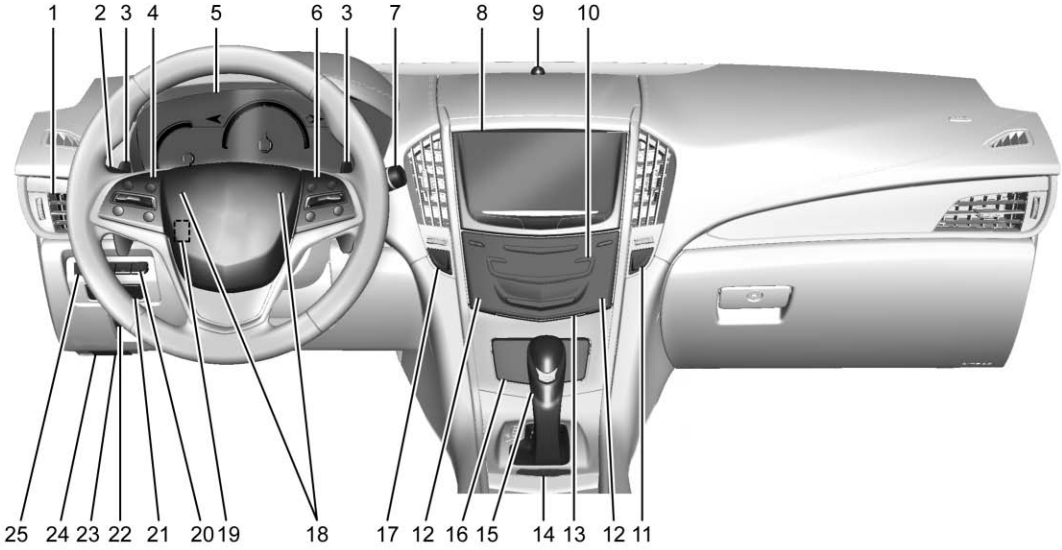
Infotainment System 22
Steering Wheel Controls 22
Cruise Control 22
Driver Information Center (DIC) 22
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 23
Forward Automatic Braking (FAB) 23
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 23
Lane Change Alert (LCA) 24
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 24
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System 24
Parking Assist 24
Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB) 24
Power Outlets 24
Universal Remote System 25
Sunroof 25

Performance and Maintenance

Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control 26
Tire Pressure Monitor 26
Fuel (LTG 2.0L L4 Turbo Engine) 27
Fuel (LGX 3.6L V6 Engines) 27
Fuel (LF4 3.6L Twin Turbo V6 Engine) 27
E85 or FlexFuel 28
Engine Oil Life System 28
Driving for Better Fuel Economy 28
Roadside Service 29

Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview



1. *Air Vents* ⇨ *171*.
2. *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *149*.

   Turn Signal Lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *153*.
3. Tap Shift Controls (If Equipped). See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *201*.
4. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *218*.

   Adaptive Cruise Control ⇨ *220* (If Equipped).

   Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System ⇨ *232* (If Equipped).

   Heated Steering Wheel ⇨ *111* (If Equipped).

   Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control ⇨ *209* (ATS-V).

   Steering Wheel Controls ⇨ *111*.
5. *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *118*.

   Driver Information Center (DIC) Display. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *134*.
6. *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *111* (If Equipped).
7. *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *112*.
8. *Infotainment* ⇨ *157*.
9. Light Sensor. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *152*.
10. *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Uplevel)* ⇨ *167* or *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Base)* ⇨ *163*.
11. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *153*.
12. *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *64* (If Equipped).
13. *Instrument Panel Storage* ⇨ *107* (If Equipped).

    Wireless Charging Pad (If Equipped) (Out of View). See *Wireless Charging* ⇨ *115*.
14. *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *209* (ATS).

    Stop/Start Disable Switch (If Equipped). See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *192*.

    Electric Parking Brake (If Equipped, Manual Transmission). See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *206* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *208*.

    MODE Button (ATS Only) or ∧ /∨ Button (ATS-V Only). See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *210*.
15. Shift Lever. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *199* or *Manual Transmission* ⇨ *203* (If Equipped).
16. Storage Bin. See *Instrument Panel Storage* ⇨ *107*.
17. ENGINE START/STOP Button. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *190*.
18. *Horn* ⇨ *112*.
19. *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *111*.
20. *Head-Up Display (HUD)* ⇨ *136* (If Equipped).
21. Parking Assist Button. See *Driver Assistance Systems* ⇨ *228*.

    Lane Keep Assist (LKA) ⇨ *239* (If Equipped).
22. Electric Parking Brake (If Equipped, Automatic Transmission). See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *206* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *208*.
23. Data Link Connector (DLC) (Out of View). See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *125*.

24. Hood Release (Out of View). See *Hood* ⇨ *253*.

25. *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *154*.

Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.

For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner's manual.

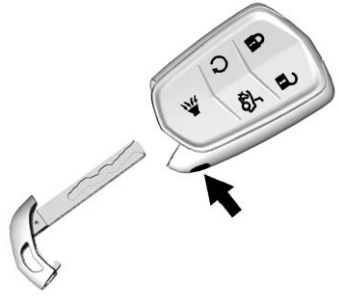
Stop/Start System

The vehicle may have a fuel saving Stop/Start system to shut off the engine and help conserve fuel.

When the brakes are applied and the vehicle is at a complete stop, the engine may turn off. When the brake pedal is released or the accelerator pedal is pushed, the engine will restart. The engine may restart even while the brake is applied. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *192*.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter may be used to lock and unlock the doors from up to 60 m (197 ft) away from the vehicle.



With Remote Start Shown, Without Similar

: Press to lock all doors.

: Press to unlock the driver door or all doors, depending on the vehicle personalization settings. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

: Press and release to initiate vehicle locator.

Press and hold for three seconds to sound the panic alarm.

Press again or start the vehicle to cancel the panic alarm.

: Press twice quickly to release the trunk.

Press the key release button near the bottom of the transmitter to remove the key. The key can be used for the driver door and the glove box.

See *Keys* ⇨ *30* and *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

Remote Vehicle Start

If equipped, the engine can be started from outside of the vehicle.

Starting the Vehicle

1. Press and release on the RKE transmitter.
2. Immediately press and hold for at least four seconds or until the turn signal lamps flash.

Start the vehicle normally after entering.

When the vehicle starts, the parking lamps will turn on.

Remote start can be extended.

Canceling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do one of the following:

- Press and hold until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *37*.

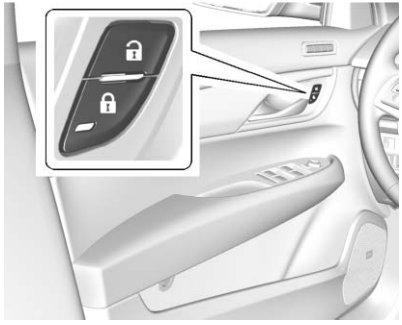
Door Locks

To lock or unlock a door manually:

- From the outside, if the vehicle is equipped with Keyless Access, press the button on the door handle when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is within range. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.
- Use the key in the driver door, or if equipped, in the front passenger door key cylinder. The key cylinder is covered by a cap. See *Door Locks* ⇨ *39*.
- From the inside, to lock a rear door, if equipped, push down on the door lock knob on top of the door. To unlock a door, pull once on the door handle to unlock it, and again to open it.

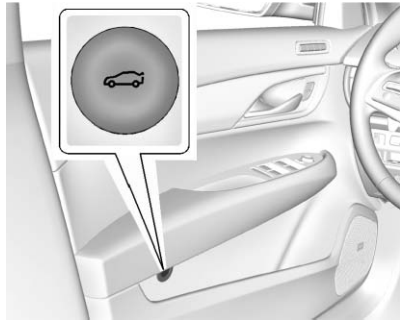
Power Door Locks

From the outside, press or on the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.



From the inside, press 🔒 or 🔓. The indicator light in the switch will illuminate when locked. See *Power Door Locks* ⇨ *41*.

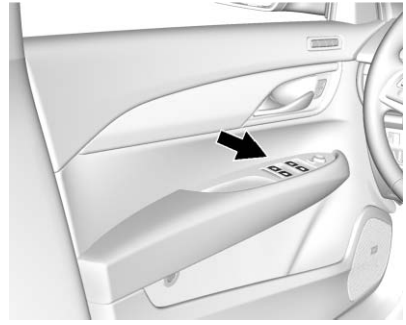
Trunk



Sedan Shown, Coupe Similar

To open the trunk, the vehicle must be off or the shift lever must be in P (Park). Press 🚗 from inside the vehicle, press x2 🚗 twice quickly on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, or press the touch pad on the rear of the trunk above the license plate after unlocking all doors.
See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31* and *Trunk* ⇨ *43*.

Windows



Sedan Shown, Coupe Similar

The power windows work when the ignition is on, in ACC/ACCESSORY, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *195*.

Using the window switch, press to open or pull to close the window.

The windows may be temporarily disabled if they are used repeatedly within a short time.

See *Power Windows* ⇨ *50*.

Seat Adjustment

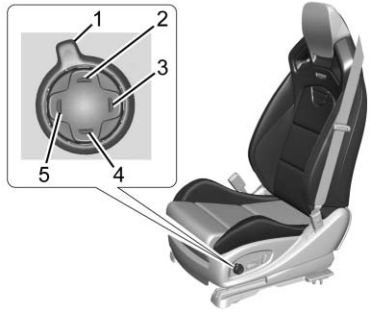
Power Seats

High Performance Seat Shown, Others Similar

To adjust the seat:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the seat by moving the rear of the control up or down.
- If equipped, raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.

High Performance Seat Adjustment

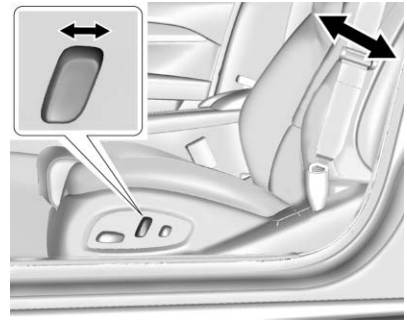


1. Feature Select
2. Up
3. Rearward
4. Down
5. Forward

- Move Feature Select (1) to display seat adjustments on the center stack. Press and release or hold to scroll through features.
- Press Up (2) to make upward adjustments of the selected feature.
- Press Rearward (3) to make rearward adjustments of the selected feature.
- Press Down (4) to make downward adjustments of the selected feature.
- Press Forward (5) to make forward adjustments of the selected feature.

See *Power Seat Adjustment* ⇨ *57*.

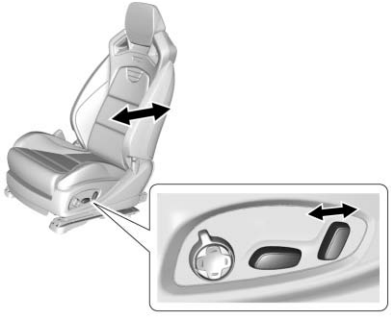
Reclining Seatbacks



Base Seat

To adjust the seatback:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.



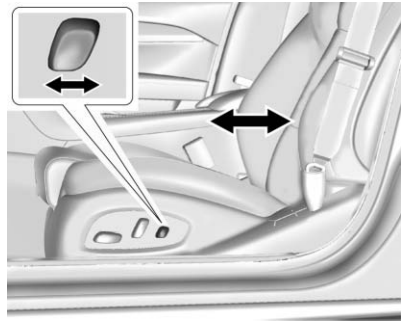
High Performance Seat

To adjust the seatback:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

See *Reclining Seatbacks* ⇨ *60*.

Lumbar Adjustment



Base Seat

To adjust the lumbar support:

- Press and hold the control forward or rearward to adjust lumbar support forward or rearward.

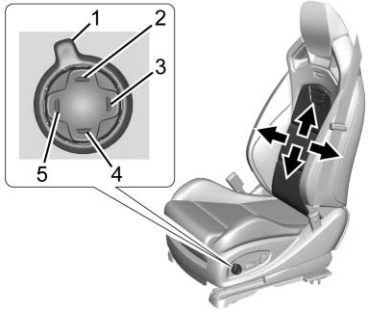
Back Bolster Adjustment

If equipped, to increase or decrease the back bolster support, press and hold the lumbar control up and down.

See *Lumbar Adjustment* ⇨ *59*.

Four-Way Lumbar Support

To adjust lumbar support, if equipped:

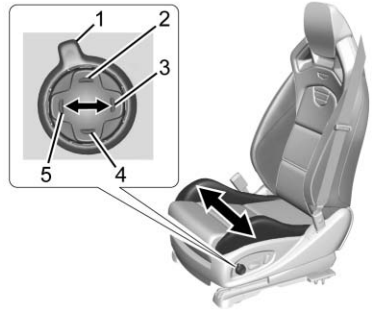


High Performance Seat

- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to lumbar support on the center stack.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust lumbar forward or rearward.
- Press Up (2) or Down (4) to adjust lumbar support up or down.

Cushion Bolster Support

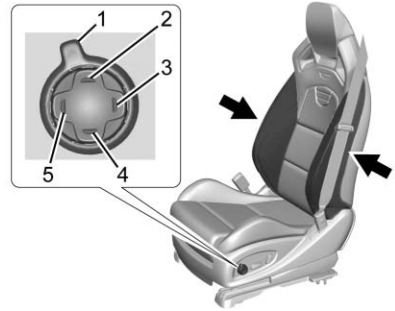
To adjust cushion bolster support, if equipped:



- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to cushion bolster support on the center stack.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust cushion bolster support inward or outward.

Back Bolster Support

To adjust back bolster support, if equipped:



- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to back bolster support on the center stack.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust back bolster support inward or outward.

Memory Features

If equipped, memory seats allow two drivers to store and recall their unique seat positions for driving the vehicle, and a shared exit position for getting out of the vehicle. Other feature positions may also be set, such as power mirrors and power steering wheel, if equipped. Memory positions are linked to RKE transmitter 1 or 2 for automatic memory recalls.

Before storing, adjust all available memory feature positions. Turn the ignition on and then press and release SET; a beep will sound. Then immediately press and hold 1, 2, or (Exit) on the driver door until two beeps sound. To manually recall these positions, press and hold 1, 2, or until the saved position is reached.

When Auto Memory Recall is enabled in vehicle personalization, positions previously stored to memory buttons 1 and 2 are recalled when the ignition is changed from off to on or ACC/ ACCESSORY.

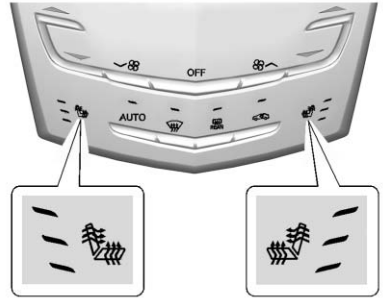
When Easy Exit Options is enabled in vehicle personalization, the feature automatically recalls the previously stored exit position when exiting the vehicle. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *61*.

Second Row Seats

The rear seatbacks can be folded down to increase cargo space.

See *Rear Seats (Sedan Only)* ⇨ *66* or *Rear Seats (Coupe Only)* ⇨ *68*.

Heated Seats



Uplevel Buttons Shown, Base Buttons Similar

If equipped, the buttons are near the climate controls on the center stack. To operate, the vehicle must be running.

Press / or / to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The indicator lights next to the

buttons indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest. If the heated seats are on high, the level may automatically be lowered after approximately 30 minutes.

See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *64*.

Auto Heated Seats

When the vehicle is on, this feature will automatically activate the heated seats at the level required by the vehicle's interior temperature.

The active high, medium, low, or off heated seat level will be indicated by the manual heated seat buttons on the center stack. Use the manual heated seat buttons on the center stack to turn auto heated seats off.

If the passenger seat is unoccupied, the auto heated seats feature will not activate that seat. The auto heated seats feature can be programmed to always be enabled when the vehicle is on.

The heated seats will not turn on during a remote start unless they are enabled in the vehicle personalization menu.

See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Head Restraint Adjustment

If equipped with base seats, the vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

If equipped with high performance seats, the vehicle's front seats have head restraints in the outboard seating positions that cannot be adjusted.

Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To achieve a comfortable seating position, change the seatback recline angle as little as necessary while keeping the seat and the head restraint height in the proper position.

See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *55* and *Power Seat Adjustment* ⇨ *57*.

Seat Belts

Refer to the following sections for important information on how to use seat belts properly:

- *Seat Belts* ⇨ *70*.
- *How to Wear Seat Belts Properly* ⇨ *71*.
- *Lap-Shoulder Belt* ⇨ *72*.
- *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *95*.

Passenger Sensing System

United States

Canada and Mexico

The passenger sensing system will turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag under certain conditions. No other airbag is affected by the passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *82*.

The passenger airbag status indicator lights on the overhead console are visible when the vehicle is started. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *124*.

Mirror Adjustment

Exterior Mirrors

1. Move the selector switch to L (Left) or R (Right) to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Press one of the four arrows to move the mirror.
3. Move the selector switch to ● to deselect the mirror.

The vehicle has manual folding mirrors. See *Folding Mirrors* ⇨ *48*.

Interior Mirrors

Adjustment

Adjust the rearview mirror for a clear view behind the vehicle.

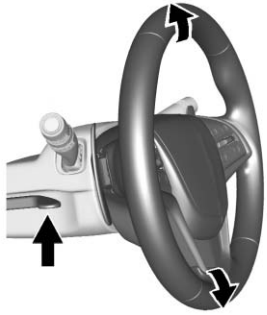
Manual Rearview Mirror

For vehicles with a manual rearview mirror, push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it for nighttime use to avoid glare from the headlamps from behind. See *Manual Rearview Mirror* ⇨ *49*.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

For vehicles with an automatic dimming rearview mirror, the mirror will automatically reduce the glare from the headlamps from behind. The dimming feature comes on when the vehicle is started. See *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror* ⇨ *49*.

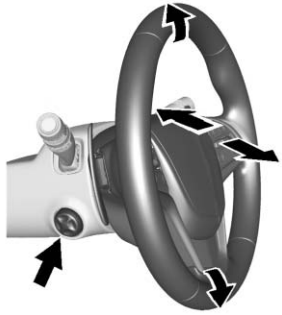
Steering Wheel Adjustment



To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Power Tilt and Telescoping Wheel



If equipped, the control is on the left side of the steering column.

- Push the control up or down to tilt the steering wheel up or down.
- Push the control forward or rearward to move the steering wheel toward the front or rear of the vehicle.

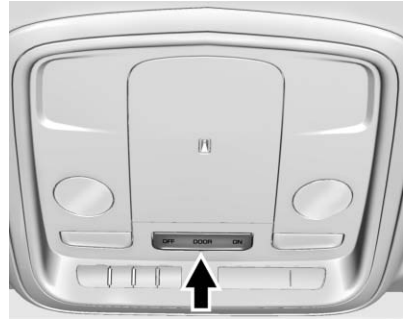
Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

To set the power tilt wheel memory position, see *Memory Seats* ⇨ *61*.

Interior Lighting

Dome Lamp

The dome lamp is in the overhead console.



To change the dome lamp settings, press the following:

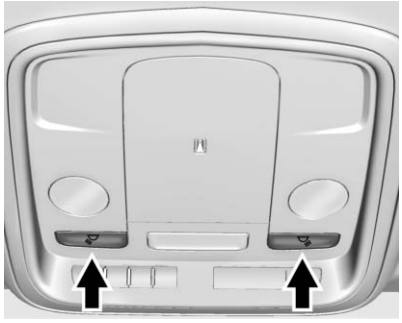
OFF : Turns the lamp off, even when a door is open.

DOOR : The lamp comes on when a door is opened.

ON : Turns the lamp on.

Reading Lamps

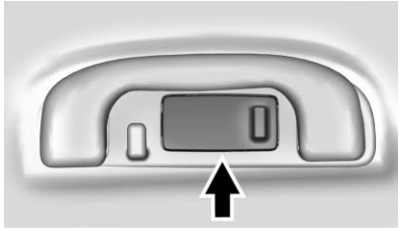
There are front and rear reading lamps. These lamps come on when any door is opened.



The front reading lamps are in the overhead console.

Press ⚲ or ⚲ to turn the lamps on or off.

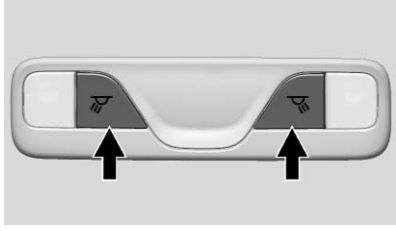
Sedan



The rear reading lamps are over the rear passenger doors.

Press the lamp lens to turn the rear passenger reading lamps on or off.

Coupe



The rear reading lamps are in the headliner.

Press ⚲ or ⚲ to turn the lamps on or off.

For more information on interior lighting, see *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *154*.

Exterior Lighting

There are four positions:

⏻ **:** Turns the exterior lamps off and deactivates the AUTO mode. Turn to ⏻ again to reactivate the AUTO mode.

In Canada, the headlamps will automatically reactivate when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) on automatic transmission vehicles, and when the parking brake is released on manual transmission vehicles.

AUTO : Automatically turns the exterior lamps on and off, depending on outside lighting.

: Turns on the parking lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

: Turns on the headlamps together with the parking lamps and instrument panel lights.

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *149* and *Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)* ⇨ *151*.

Windshield Wiper/Washer

With the ignition on or in ACC/ACCESSORY, move the lever to select the wiper speed.

HI : Use for fast wipes.

LO : Use for slow wipes.

INT : Use this setting for intermittent wipes or Rainsense, if equipped. For intermittent wipes, move the windshield wiper lever to INT. Turn the INT band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

If equipped with Rainsense and the feature is enabled in vehicle personalization, move the windshield wiper lever to INT and turn the INT band to adjust the sensitivity to moisture.

- Turn the band up for more sensitivity to moisture.
- Turn the band down for less sensitivity to moisture.
- Move the windshield wiper lever out of the INT position to deactivate Rainsense.

To turn the Rainsense feature on or off, see “Rain Sense Wipers” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

OFF : Use to turn the wipers off.

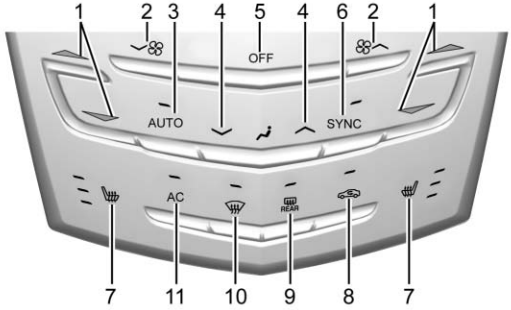
1X : For a single wipe, briefly move the lever down. For several wipes, hold the lever down.

: Pull the lever toward you to spray windshield washer fluid and activate the wipers.

See *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *112*.

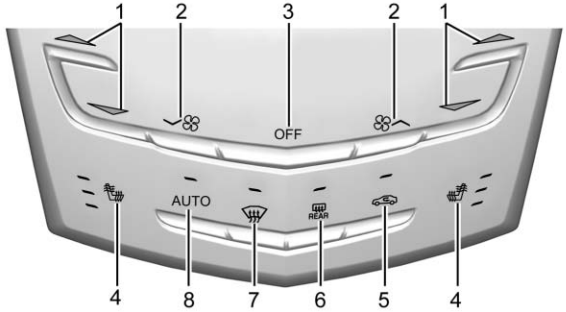
Climate Controls

If equipped with one of these systems, it controls the heating, cooling, and ventilation.



Base

1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. Fan Control
3. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
4. Air Delivery Mode Control
5. OFF (Fan)
6. SYNC (Synchronize Driver and Passenger Temperature)
7. Driver and Passenger Heated Seats (If Equipped)
8. Recirculation
9. Rear Window Defogger
10. Defrost
11. AC (Air Conditioning)



Uplevel

1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. Fan Control
3. OFF (Fan)
4. Driver and Passenger Heated Seats (If Equipped)
5. Recirculation
6. Rear Window Defogger
7. Defrost
8. AUTO (Automatic Operation)

See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Uplevel)* ⇨ *167* or *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Base)* ⇨ *163*.

Transmission

Driver Shift Control (DSC) or Tap Shift

Vehicles equipped with DSC allow shifting an automatic transmission similar to a manual transmission. DSC can be enabled through the shift lever or the tap shift controls on the back of the steering wheel, if equipped. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *201*.

Vehicle Features

Infotainment System

See the infotainment manual for information on the radio, audio players, phone, navigation system, and voice or speech recognition. It also includes information on settings.

Steering Wheel Controls

The infotainment system can be operated by using the steering wheel controls. See "Steering Wheel Controls" in the infotainment manual.

Cruise Control

: Press to turn the system on and off. A white cruise control indicator appears in the instrument cluster when cruise is turned on.

+RES : If there is a set speed in memory, press the control up briefly to resume to that speed or hold to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed. To increase speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press +RES up to the first detent. To increase speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press +RES up to the second detent.

SET– : Press the control down briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease vehicle speed. To decrease speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press SET– down to the first detent. To decrease speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press SET– down to the second detent.

: Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *218* or *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *220* (if equipped).

Driver Information Center (DIC)

The DIC display is in the instrument cluster. It shows the status of many vehicle systems.

∧ or ∨ : Press to move up or down in a list.

< or > : Press to move between the interactive display zones in the cluster. Press < to go back to the previous menu.

SEL : Press to open a menu or select a menu item. Press and hold to reset values on certain screens.

See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *134*.

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

If equipped, FCA may help avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. FCA provides a green indicator, , when a vehicle is detected ahead. This indicator displays amber if you follow a vehicle too closely. When approaching a vehicle ahead too quickly, FCA provides a flashing red alert on the windshield and rapidly beeps or pulses the driver seat.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *232*.

Forward Automatic Braking (FAB)

If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it also has FAB, which includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA). When the system detects a vehicle ahead in your path that is traveling in the same direction that you may be about to crash into, it can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle. This can help avoid or lessen the severity of crashes when driving in a forward gear.

See *Forward Automatic Braking (FAB)* ⇨ *235*.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA)

If equipped, LKA may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. It may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using a turn signal in that direction. It may also provide a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert as the lane marking is crossed. The system will not assist or alert if it detects that you are actively steering. Override LKA by turning the steering wheel. LKA uses a camera to detect lane markings between 60 km/h (37 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph).

See *Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* ⇨ *238* and *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *239*.

Lane Change Alert (LCA)

If equipped, the LCA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding lane change crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind zone (or spot) areas or with vehicles rapidly approaching these areas from behind. The LCA warning display will light up in the corresponding outside mirror and will flash if the turn signal is on. The Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system is included as part of the LCA system.

See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* ⇨ *236* and *Lane Change Alert (LCA)* ⇨ *237*.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

If equipped, RVC shows a view of the area behind the vehicle on the infotainment display when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse) to aid with parking and low-speed backing maneuvers.

See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *229*.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System

If equipped, the RCTA system shows a triangle with an arrow on the infotainment display to warn of traffic behind your vehicle that may cross your vehicle's path while in R (Reverse). In addition, beeps will sound, or the driver seat will pulse.

See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *229*.

Parking Assist

If equipped, Rear Parking Assist (RPA) uses sensors on the rear bumper to assist with parking and avoiding objects while in R (Reverse). It operates at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph). RPA may show a warning triangle on the infotainment display and a graphic on the instrument cluster to provide the object distance. In addition, multiple beeps or seat pulses may occur if very close to an object.

The vehicle may also have the Front Parking Assist system.

See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *229*.

Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB)

If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) it also has the RAB system, which is designed to help avoid or reduce the harm caused by backing crashes when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse). If the system detects the vehicle is backing too fast to avoid a crash with a detected object behind your vehicle in your path, it may automatically brake hard to a stop.

See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *229*.

Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

The vehicle has two accessory power outlets:

- Inside the instrument panel storage area below the climate control system.
- On the rear of the center floor console.

Lift the cover to access the accessory power outlet.

See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *114*.

Universal Remote System

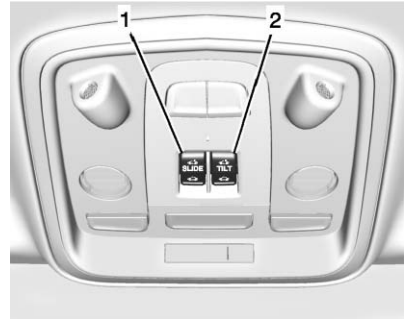
If equipped, this system provides a way to replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the Universal Remote system. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person available to assist you with programming the Universal Remote system.

See *Universal Remote System* ⇨ *146*.

Sunroof

If equipped with a sunroof, the ignition must be on or in ACC/ ACCESSORY, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active, to operate the sunroof.
See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *190* and *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *195*.



1. SLIDE Switch
2. TILT Switch

Slide Switch

Express-Open/Express-Close :
Press SLIDE (1) to the second detent and release to express-open the sunroof. Press (1) to the second detent and release to express-close the sunroof. Press again to stop the movement.

Open/Close (Manual Mode) : Press SLIDE (1) to the first detent and hold to open the sunroof. Press (1) to the first detent and hold to close the sunroof. Release to stop the movement.

Tilt Switch

Vent Feature : Press and hold TILT (2) to vent the sunroof. The sunshade must be manually opened. Press and hold (2) to close the sunroof vent.

The sunroof is equipped with an automatic reversal system. See *Sunroof* ⇨ *52*.

Performance and Maintenance

Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control

The Traction Control System (TCS) limits wheel spin. The system is on when the vehicle is started.

The StabiliTrak system assists with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions. The system is on when the vehicle is started.

- To turn off TCS, press and release OFF on the center console (ATS) or the steering wheel (ATS-V). TC illuminates in the instrument cluster and a DIC message may display.
- Press and release OFF again to turn traction control back on.
- To turn off both TCS and StabiliTrak, press and hold OFF on the center console (ATS) or the steering wheel (ATS-V) until OFF and TC illuminate in the instrument cluster. A DIC message may display.
- Press and release OFF again to turn on both systems.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *209*.

The vehicle has Driver Mode Control and may have Competitive Driving Mode.
See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *210* and *Competitive Driving Mode (FE3 Only)* ⇨ *214*.

Tire Pressure Monitor

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS).

The low tire pressure warning light alerts to a significant loss in pressure of one of the vehicle's tires. If the

warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186*. The warning light will remain on until the tire pressure is corrected.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This may be an early indicator that the tire pressures are getting low and the tires need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

The TPMS does not replace normal monthly tire maintenance. Maintain the correct tire pressures.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor System* ⇨ *299*.

Fuel (LTG 2.0L L4 Turbo Engine)

Premium Recommended Fuel

Use premium 93 octane unleaded gasoline in your vehicle. Unleaded gasoline with an octane rating as low as 87 may be used, but it will reduce performance and fuel economy. See *Fuel* ⇨ *240*.

Fuel (LGX 3.6L V6 Engines)

Regular Fuel

Use only unleaded gasoline rated 87 octane or higher in your vehicle. Do not use gasoline with an octane rating lower as it may result in vehicle damage and lower fuel economy. See *Fuel* ⇨ *240*.

Fuel (LF4 3.6L Twin Turbo V6 Engine)

Premium Required Fuel

Use premium 93 octane unleaded gasoline in your vehicle. Unleaded gasoline with a 91 octane rating may be used, but it will reduce performance and fuel economy. See *Fuel* ⇨ *240*.

E85 or FlexFuel

No E85 or FlexFuel

Gasoline-ethanol fuel blends greater than E15 (15% ethanol by volume), such as E85, cannot be used in this vehicle.

Engine Oil Life System

The engine oil life system calculates engine oil life based on vehicle use and displays the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message when it is time to change the engine oil and filter. The oil life system should be reset to 100% only following an oil change.

Resetting the Oil Life System

1. Using the DIC controls on the right side of the steering wheel, display REMAINING OIL LIFE on the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *134*. When remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display.
2. Press and hold SEL to clear the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message and reset the oil life at 100%.

   Be careful not to reset the oil life display accidentally at any time other than after the oil is changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change.

The oil life system can also be reset as follows:

1. Display REMAINING OIL LIFE on the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *134*.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.

   If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is not on, the system is reset.

See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *261*.

Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible.

- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tires properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.
- Replace the vehicle's tires with the same TPC Spec number molded into the tire's sidewall near the size.

- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

Roadside Service

U.S.: 1-800-224-1400

Canada: 1-800-882-1112

TTY Users (U.S. Only): 1-888-889-2438

New Cadillac owners are automatically enrolled in the Roadside Service Program.

See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *358*.

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks

Keys 30
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 31
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 31
Remote Vehicle Start 37
Door Locks 39
Power Door Locks 41
Delayed Locking 41
Automatic Door Locks 42
Lockout Protection 42
Safety Locks (Sedan Only) 43

Doors

Trunk 43

Vehicle Security

Vehicle Security 45
Vehicle Alarm System 45
Immobilizer 47
Immobilizer Operation 47

Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors 48
Power Mirrors 48
Folding Mirrors 48
Heated Mirrors 49
Reverse Tilt Mirrors 49

Interior Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirrors 49
Manual Rearview Mirror 49
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror 49

Windows

Windows 49
Power Windows 50
Sun Visors 52

Roof

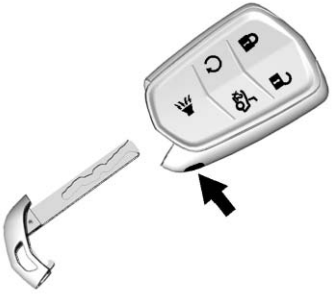
Sunroof 52

Keys and Locks

Keys

⚠ Warning

Leaving children in a vehicle with a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is dangerous and children or others could be seriously injured or killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the RKE transmitter in the vehicle, and children or others could be caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave children in a vehicle with an RKE transmitter.



This key, inside the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, is used for the driver door and glove box.

To remove the key, press the button near the bottom of the transmitter, and pull the key out. Never pull the key out without pressing the button.

See your dealer if a new key is needed.

Contact Roadside Service if locked out of the vehicle. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *358*.

With an active OnStar service plan, an OnStar Advisor may remotely unlock the vehicle. See *OnStar Overview* ⇨ *368*.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *364*.

If there is a decrease in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The Keyless Access system allows for vehicle entry when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft). See “Keyless Access Operation” following.

The RKE transmitter functions may work up to 60 m (197 ft) away from the vehicle.

Keep in mind that other conditions, such as those previously stated, can impact the performance of the transmitter.

With Remote Start Shown, Without Similar

: Press to lock all doors and if equipped, the fuel door. The turn signal indicators may flash and/or the horn may sound on the second press to indicate locking. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

If the driver door is open when is pressed and enabled through vehicle personalization, all doors will lock and then the driver door will immediately unlock. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*. If a passenger door is open when is pressed, all doors lock.

Pressing may also arm the alarm system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *45*.

If equipped with auto mirror folding, pressing and holding for one second will fold the mirrors. The auto mirror folding feature will not operate unless it is enabled. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

: Press to unlock the driver door. Press unlock again within five seconds to unlock all doors. The RKE transmitter can be programmed to unlock all doors on the first button press. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

When remotely unlocking the vehicle at night, the headlamps and back-up lamps will come on for about 30 seconds to light your approach to the vehicle. The turn signal indicators may flash to indicate unlocking.

See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Pressing will disarm the alarm system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *45*.

Press and hold until the windows fully open. Windows will not operate unless remote window operation is enabled. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

If equipped, pressing will also unlock the fuel door.

: If equipped, press and release and then immediately press and hold for at least four seconds to start the engine from outside the vehicle using the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *37*.

: Press and release to initiate vehicle locator. The exterior lamps flash and the horn chirps three times. Press and hold for three seconds to sound the panic alarm. The horn sounds and the turn signal lamps flash for 30 seconds, or until is pressed again or the vehicle is started.

x2 **:** Press twice quickly to release the trunk.

Keyless Access Operation

Some vehicles have the Keyless Access system that lets you lock and unlock the doors and access the trunk without removing the RKE transmitter from your pocket, purse, briefcase, etc. The RKE transmitter must be within 1 m (3 ft) of the trunk or door being opened. If the vehicle has this feature, there will be a button on the outside door handles.

The Keyless Access system can be programmed to unlock all doors on the first lock/unlock press from the driver door. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

If equipped with memory seats, RKE transmitters 1 and 2 are linked to seating positions of memory 1 or 2. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *61*.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Driver Door

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on the driver door handle will unlock the driver door.

If the lock/unlock button is pressed again within five seconds, all passenger doors will unlock.

Driver Door Shown, Passenger Similar

Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- It has been more than five seconds since the first lock/unlock button press.
- Two lock/unlock button presses were used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Passenger Doors

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on a passenger door handle will unlock all doors. Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- The lock/unlock button was used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

Passive Locking

If equipped with Keyless Access, the vehicle will lock several seconds after all doors are closed if the vehicle is off and at least one RKE transmitter has been removed or none remain in the vehicle.

If equipped with a locking fuel door, the locking fuel door will also lock at this time.

If other electronic devices interfere with the RKE transmitter signal, the vehicle may not detect the RKE

transmitter inside the vehicle.
If passive locking is enabled, the doors may lock with the RKE transmitter inside the vehicle. Do not leave the RKE transmitter in an unattended vehicle.

Temporary Disable of Passive Locking Feature

Temporarily disable the passive locking by pressing and holding 🔓 on the interior door switch with a door open for at least four seconds, or until three chimes are heard. Passive locking will then remain disabled until 🔒 on the interior door is pressed, or until the vehicle is turned on.

To customize the doors to automatically lock when exiting the vehicle, see *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Keyless Trunk Opening

Press the touch pad on the trunk to open the trunk if the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft).

Key Access

To access a vehicle with a weak transmitter battery, see *Door Locks* ⇨ *39*.

Remote Left In Vehicle Alert

When the vehicle is turned off and an RKE transmitter is left in the vehicle, the horn will chirp three times after all doors are closed. To turn on or off see *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Remote No Longer in Vehicle Alert

If the vehicle is on, with a door open, and then all doors are closed, the vehicle will check for RKE transmitters inside. If an RKE transmitter is not detected, the DIC will display NO REMOTE DETECTED and the horn will chirp three times.

This occurs only once each time the vehicle is driven.

See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to the vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. The vehicle can be reprogrammed so that lost or stolen transmitters no longer work. Each vehicle can have up to eight transmitters matched to it.

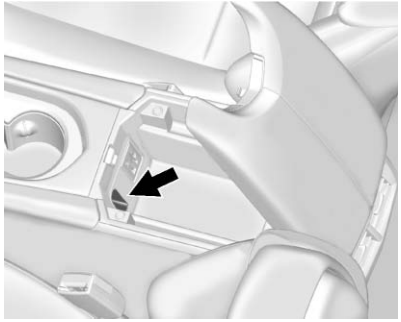
Programming with Recognized Transmitters

A new transmitter can be programmed to the vehicle when there are two recognized transmitters.

To program, the vehicle must be off and all transmitters, both currently recognized and new, must be with you.

1. Remove the vehicle key from the recognized transmitter.
2. Place the two recognized transmitters in the cupholder.
3. Remove the key lock cylinder cap. See *Door Locks* ⇨ *39*. Insert the vehicle key into the key lock cylinder on the driver door handle, then turn the key counterclockwise to the unlock position five times within 10 seconds.

The Driver Information Center (DIC) displays READY TO LEARN ELECTRONIC KEY #2, 3, 4, ETC.



4. Place the new transmitter into the transmitter pocket. Open the center console storage area to access the transmitter pocket.
5. Press ENGINE START/STOP. When the transmitter is learned, the DIC display will show that it is ready to program the next transmitter.
6. Remove the transmitter from the transmitter pocket and press 🔓 or 🔒 on the transmitter.

   To program additional transmitters, repeat Steps 4–6.

   When all additional transmitters are programmed, press and hold ENGINE START/STOP for approximately 12 seconds to exit programming mode.
7. Return the vehicle key back into the transmitter.

Programming without Recognized Transmitters

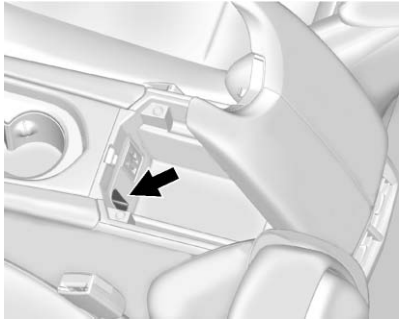
If two currently recognized transmitters are not available, follow this procedure to program up to eight transmitters. This feature is not available in Canada. This procedure will take approximately 30 minutes to complete. The vehicle must be off and all transmitters to be programmed must be with you.

1. Remove the vehicle key from the transmitter.
2. Remove the key lock cylinder cap. See *Door Locks* ⇨ *39*. Insert the vehicle key into the key lock cylinder on the driver door handle, then turn the key counterclockwise to the unlock position five times within 10 seconds.

   The Driver Information Center (DIC) displays REMOTE LEARN PENDING, PLEASE WAIT.
3. Wait for 10 minutes until the DIC displays PRESS ENGINE START BUTTON TO LEARN and then press ENGINE START/STOP.

   The DIC display will again show REMOTE LEARN PENDING, PLEASE WAIT.
4. Repeat Step 3 two additional times. After the third time all previously known transmitters will no longer work with the vehicle. Remaining transmitters can be relearned during the next steps.

   The DIC display should now show READY FOR REMOTE # 1.



5. Place the new transmitter in the transmitter pocket. Open the center console storage area to access the transmitter pocket.
6. Press ENGINE START/STOP. When the transmitter is learned, the DIC display will show that it is ready to program the next transmitter.
7. Remove the transmitter from the transmitter pocket and press 🔒 or 🔓 on the transmitter.

   To program additional transmitters, repeat Steps 5–7.

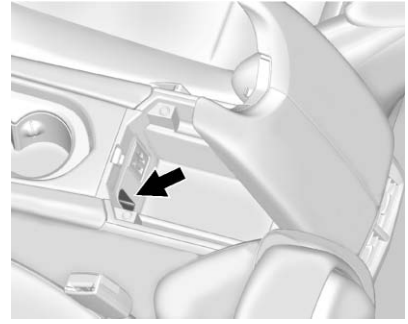
   When all additional transmitters are programmed, press and hold ENGINE START/STOP for approximately 12 seconds to exit programming mode.
8. Return the vehicle key back into the transmitter.

Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery

If the transmitter battery is weak or if there is interference with the signal, the DIC may display a message when you try to start the vehicle.

To start the vehicle:

1. Open the center console storage area.



2. Place the transmitter in the transmitter pocket.
3. With the vehicle in P (Park) or N (Neutral), press the brake pedal and ENGINE START/STOP.

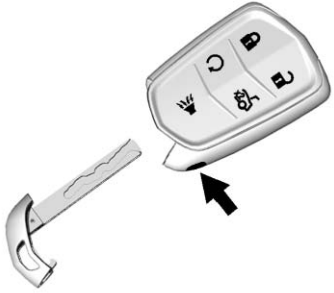
   Replace the transmitter battery as soon as possible.

Battery Replacement

Caution

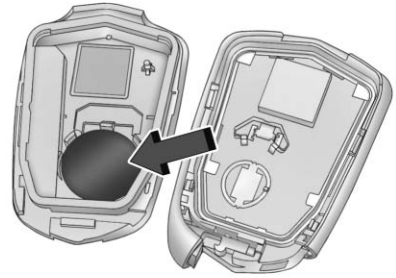
When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.

Replace the battery if the REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message displays in the DIC.



1. Press the button on the side of the transmitter near the bottom and pull the key out.

2. Separate the two halves of the transmitter using a flat tool inserted into the bottom center of the transmitter. Do not use the key slot.



3. Remove the old battery. Do not use a metal object.
4. Insert the new battery on the back housing, positive side facing down. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
5. Align the front and back housing then snap the transmitter together.

Remote Vehicle Start

If equipped, this feature allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

: This button will be on the RKE transmitter if the vehicle has remote start.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start. The rear window defogger may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. The rear defog indicator light does not come on during remote start.

If equipped heated seats, they may come on during a remote start. See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *64*.

If equipped with a remote start heated steering wheel, it may come on during a remote start. See *Heated Steering Wheel* ⇨ *111*.

Laws in some local communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws may require a person using remote start to have the vehicle in view. Check local regulations for any requirements.

If your vehicle is low on fuel, do not use the remote start feature. The vehicle may run out of fuel.

The RKE transmitter range may be less while the vehicle is running.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *31*.

Starting the Engine Using Remote Start

1. Press and release on the RKE transmitter.
2. Immediately press and hold for at least four seconds or until the turn signal lamps flash. The flashing confirms the request to remote start the vehicle has been received.

   During the remote start, the doors will be locked and the parking lamps will remain on as long as the engine is running.

   The engine will shut off after 10 minutes unless a time extension is done or the vehicle is started.
3. Press the brake pedal and start the vehicle to drive.

Extending Engine Run Time

The engine run time can also be extended by another 10 minutes, if during the first 10 minutes Steps 1 and 2 are repeated while the engine is still running. An extension can be requested, 30 seconds after starting. This provides a total of 20 minutes.

The remote start can only be extended once.

A maximum of two remote starts, or a remote start with an extension, are allowed between ignition cycles.

The vehicle's ignition must be turned on and then off before the remote start procedure can be used again.

Canceling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do any of the following:

- Press and hold until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then back off.

Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Work

The remote start will not operate if any of the following occur:

- The ignition is in any mode other than off.
- A transmitter is in the vehicle.
- The hood is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- There is an emission control system malfunction.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- Two remote vehicle starts or a start with an extension have already been used.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

Door Locks

⚠ Warning

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. The doors can be unlocked and opened while the vehicle is moving. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear seat belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.
- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop the vehicle. Locking the doors can help prevent this from happening.

To lock/unlock the doors from outside the vehicle:

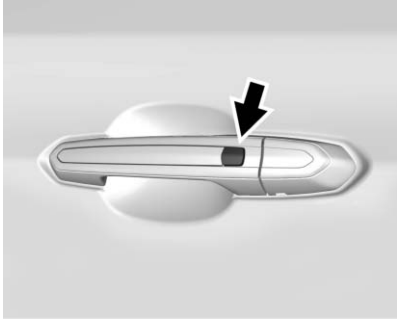
- Press 🔒 or 🔓 on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.
- Use the key in the key lock cylinder in the driver door or, if equipped, the passenger door. The key lock cylinder is covered with a cap.

To lock/unlock the doors from inside the vehicle:

- Press 🔒 or 🔓 on the power door lock switch. See *Power Door Locks* ⇨ *41*.

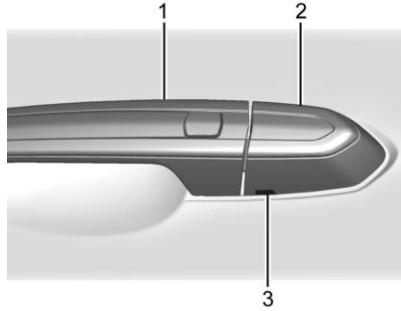
- Pull once on the door handle to unlock the door and again to open the door.
- On the rear doors, push down on the door lock knob to lock the door manually.

Keyless Access



If equipped, use the Keyless Access system to lock and unlock the door. When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the driver door handle, press the lock/unlock button. When unlocking from the driver door, the first press unlocks that door; press again within five seconds to unlock all passenger doors and the trunk. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

Driver Door Key Lock Cylinder Access (In Case of Dead Battery)

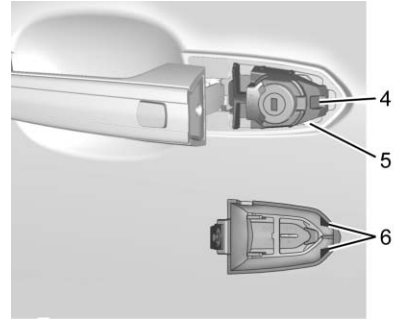


To access the driver door key lock cylinder:

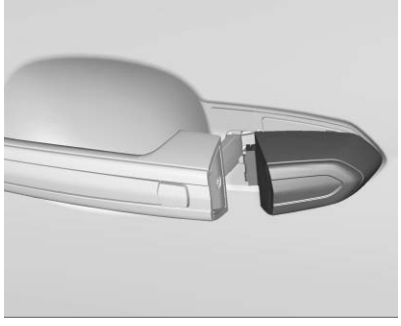
1. Pull the door handle (1) to the open position and hold it open until the cap removal is complete.
2. Insert the key into the slot (3) on the bottom of the cap (2) and lift the key upward.
3. Move the cap (2) rearward and remove.
4. Use the key in the cylinder.

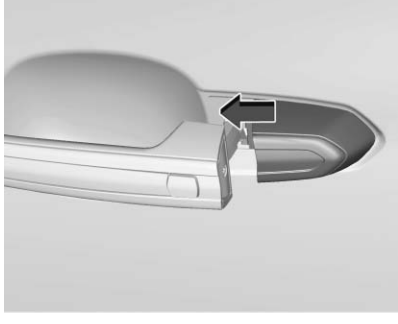
To replace the cap:

1. Pull the door handle (1) to the open position and hold it open until the cap installation is complete.



2. Insert the two tabs (6) at the back of the cap between the seal (5) and the metal base (4).





3. Slide the cap forward and press the forward edge to install the cap in place.
4. Release the door handle.
5. Check that the cap is secure.

Free-Turning Locks

The door key lock cylinder turns freely when either the wrong key is used, or the correct key is not fully inserted. The free-turning door lock feature prevents the lock from being forced open. To reset the lock, turn it to the vertical position with the correct key fully inserted. Remove the key and insert it again. If this does not reset the lock, turn the key halfway around in the cylinder and repeat the reset procedure.

Power Door Locks

: Press to lock the doors. The indicator light in the switch will illuminate when activated.

: Press to unlock the doors.

Delayed Locking

This feature delays the actual locking of the doors until five seconds after all doors are closed.

Delayed locking can only be turned on when the Open Door Anti-Lockout feature has been turned off.

When 🔒 is pressed on the power door lock switch with the door open, a chime will sound three times indicating that delayed locking is active.

The doors will then lock automatically five seconds after all doors are closed. If a door is reopened before five seconds have elapsed, the five-second timer will reset once all the doors are closed again.

Press 🔒 on the door lock switch again, or press 🔒 on the RKE transmitter, to override this feature and lock the doors immediately.

Delayed locking can be programmed through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Automatic Door Locks

The vehicle is programmed so that when the doors are closed, the ignition is on, and the shift lever is moved out of P (Park) for automatic transmissions, or the vehicle speed is above 13 km/h (8 mph) for manual transmissions, the doors will lock.

If a vehicle door is unlocked and then opened and closed, the doors will lock either when your foot is removed from the brake or the vehicle speed becomes faster than 13 km/h (8 mph).

To unlock the doors:

- Press an unlock switch on a door.
- For vehicles with an automatic transmission, shift the transmission into P (Park).
- For vehicles with a manual transmission, turn the vehicle off when parked.

Automatic door locking cannot be disabled. Automatic door unlocking can be programmed. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Lockout Protection

If the vehicle is on or in ACC/ACCESSORY and the power door lock switch is pressed with the driver door open, all the doors will lock and only the driver door will unlock.

If the vehicle is off and is locked while a door is open, when all doors are closed the vehicle will check for RKE transmitter(s) inside. If RKE transmitter(s) are detected and none were removed, the driver door will unlock and the horn will chirp three times.

This feature can be manually overridden with the driver door open by pressing and holding 🔒 on the power door lock switch.

Open Door Anti-Lockout

If Open Door Anti-Lockout has been turned on and the vehicle is off, the driver door is open, and locking is requested, all the doors will lock and the driver door will remain unlocked. Push the lock button on the door or the RKE transmitter a second time to lock the driver door.

The Open Door Anti-Lockout feature can be turned on or off. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

When this feature is off, the Delayed Door Lock menu will be available.

Safety Locks (Sedan Only)

The rear door safety locks prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle.

Press to activate the safety locks on the rear doors. The indicator light in the switch will illuminate when activated.

The rear door power windows are also disabled. See *Power Windows* ⇨ *50*.

Press again to deactivate the safety locks.

If an inside rear door handle is being pulled at the same time the safety lock is deactivated, only that door will remain locked and the indicator light may flash. Release the handle, then press the safety lock twice to deactivate the safety locks.

Doors

Trunk

⚠ Warning

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the liftgate or trunk/hatch open, or with any objects that pass through the seal between the body and the trunk/hatch or liftgate. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven with the liftgate or trunk/hatch open:

- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and

(Continued)

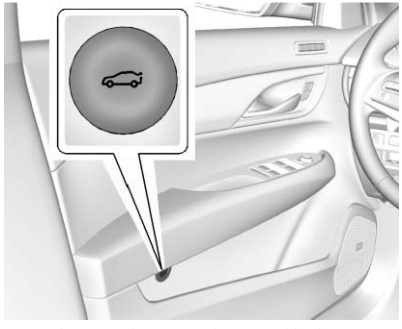
Warning (Continued)

set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems” in the Index.

- If the vehicle is equipped with a power liftgate, disable the power liftgate function.

See *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *198*.

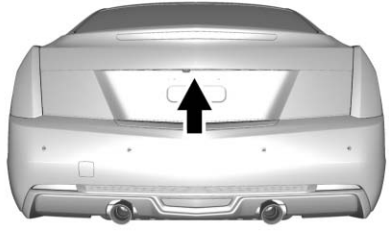
Trunk Lock Release



Sedan Shown, Coupe Similar

To open the trunk, the vehicle must be off or the shift lever must be in P (Park).

- Press on the driver door.
- Press twice quickly on the RKE transmitter.



- Press the touch pad on the rear of the trunk above the license plate when all doors are unlocked.

The trunk may also be opened while the vehicle is locked by pressing the touch pad on the rear of the trunk above the license plate while the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the rear of the vehicle.

If the vehicle is ever without power, the trunk area can still be accessed.

To access by the rear seat pass-through door, if equipped:

1. Fold the rear armrest down and open the pass-through door. See *Rear Seat Pass-Through Door* ⇨ *69*.
2. Reach inward through the opening to locate the emergency trunk release handle. See “Emergency Trunk Release Handle” following.
3. Pull the release handle toward the front of the vehicle to open the trunk.

To access by folding the rear seat, if equipped:

1. Fold down the rear seatback. See *Rear Seats (Sedan Only)* ⇨ *66* or *Rear Seats (Coupe Only)* ⇨ *68*.
2. Reach inward through the opening to locate the emergency trunk release handle.
3. Pull the release handle toward the front of the vehicle to open the trunk.

Emergency Trunk Release Handle

Caution

Do not use the emergency trunk release handle as a tie-down or anchor point when securing items in the trunk as it could damage the handle.

There is a glow-in-the-dark emergency trunk release handle on the trunk lid. This handle will glow following exposure to light. Pull the release handle to open the trunk from the inside.

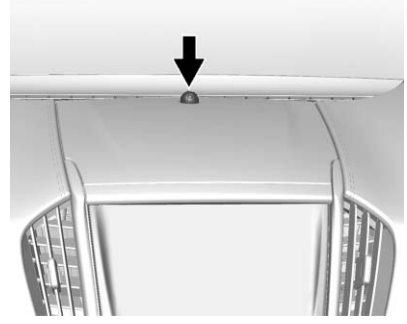
After use, return to the stored position.

Vehicle Security

This vehicle has theft-deterrent features; however, they do not make the vehicle impossible to steal.

Vehicle Alarm System

This vehicle has an anti-theft alarm system.



The indicator light, on the instrument panel near the windshield, indicates the status of the system.

Off : Vehicle system is disarmed.

On Solid : Vehicle is secured during the delay to arm the system.

Fast Flash : Vehicle is unsecured. A door, the hood, or the trunk is open.

Slow Flash : Alarm system is armed.

Arming the Alarm System

1. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Lock the vehicle in one of three ways:
   - Use the RKE transmitter.
   - Use the Keyless Access system.
   - With a door open, press the interior 🔒.
3. After 30 seconds the alarm system will arm, and the indicator light will begin to slowly flash indicating the alarm system is operating. Pressing 🔒 on the RKE transmitter a second time will bypass the 30-second delay and immediately arm the alarm system.

The vehicle alarm system will not arm if the doors are locked with the key.

If the driver door is opened without first unlocking with the RKE transmitter, the horn will chirp and the lights will flash to indicate pre-alarm. If the vehicle is not started, or the door is not unlocked by pressing 🔓 on the RKE transmitter during the 10-second pre-alarm, the alarm will be activated.

The alarm will also be activated if a passenger door, the trunk, or the hood is opened without first disarming the system. When the alarm is activated, the turn signals flash and the horn sounds for about 30 seconds. the alarm system will then re-arm to monitor for the next unauthorized event.

Disarming the Alarm System

To disarm the alarm system or turn off the alarm if it has been activated, do one of the following:

- Press 🔓 on the RKE transmitter.
- Unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Access system.
- Start the vehicle.

To avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- Lock the vehicle after all occupants have left the vehicle and all doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with the RKE transmitter or use the Keyless Access system.

Unlocking the driver door with the key will not disarm the system or turn off the alarm.

How to Detect a Tamper Condition

If 🔓 is pressed on the RKE transmitter and the horn chirps and the lights flash three times, a previous alarm occurred while the system was armed.

If the alarm has been activated, a message will appear on the DIC.

Power Sounder and Inclination Sensor

In addition to the standard theft-deterrent system features, this system may also have a power sounder and inclination sensor.

The power sounder provides an audible alarm which is distinct from the vehicle's horn. It has its own power source, and can sound an alarm if the vehicle's battery is compromised.

The inclination sensor can set off the alarm if it senses movement of the vehicle, such as a change in vehicle orientation.

Immobilizer

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *364*.

Immobilizer Operation

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilized when the vehicle is turned off.

The immobilization system is disarmed when the ignition is in ACC/ACCESSORY mode or the vehicle is started and a valid transmitter is present in the vehicle.

The security light, in the instrument cluster, comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

The system has one or more RKE transmitters matched to an immobilizer control unit in the vehicle. Only a correctly matched RKE transmitter will start the vehicle. If the transmitter is ever damaged, you may not be able to start your vehicle.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If the engine does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the vehicle off and try again.

If the vehicle will not change ignition modes (ACC/ACCESSORY, on, off), and the RKE transmitter appears to be undamaged, try another transmitter. Or, you may try placing the transmitter in the transmitter pocket located in the center console.

If the ignition modes will not change with the other transmitter or in the transmitter pocket, your vehicle needs service. If the ignition does change modes, the first transmitter may be faulty. See your dealer.

It is possible for the immobilizer system to learn new or replacement RKE transmitters. Up to eight transmitters can be programmed for the vehicle. To program additional transmitters, see "Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle" under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft-deterrent system in the vehicle.

Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors

⚠ Warning

A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on the right. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

The passenger side mirror is convex shaped. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat.

Power Mirrors

1. Move the selector switch to L (Left) or R (Right) to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Press one of the four arrows to move the mirror.
3. Move the selector switch to ● to deselect the mirror.

Exterior Automatic Dimming Mirror

If equipped, the driver side exterior automatic dimming mirror will automatically adjust for the glare of headlamps behind.

Memory Mirrors

The vehicle may have exterior memory mirrors. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *61*.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

The vehicle may have Side Blind Zone Alert. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* ⇨ *236*.

Turn Signal Indicator

If equipped with turn signal indicators on the mirror housings, the indicator will flash when a turn signal or the hazard warning flashers are used.

Folding Mirrors

Manual Folding Mirrors

The mirrors can be folded inward toward the vehicle to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. Push the mirror outward to return it to the original position.

Heated Mirrors

REAR : Press to heat the mirrors.

See “Rear Window Defogger” under *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Uplevel)* ⇨ *167* or *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Base)* ⇨ *163*.

Reverse Tilt Mirrors

If equipped with memory seats, the passenger and/or driver mirror tilts to a preselected position when the vehicle is in R (Reverse). This allows the curb to be seen when parallel parking.

The mirror(s) return to the original position when:

- The vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse), or remains in R (Reverse) for about 30 seconds.
- The ignition is turned off.
- The vehicle is driven in R (Reverse) above a set speed.

To turn this feature on or off, see *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Interior Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirrors

Adjust the rearview mirror for a clear view of the area behind the vehicle.

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

Manual Rearview Mirror

If equipped with a manual rearview mirror, push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it for nighttime use to avoid glare from the headlamps from behind.

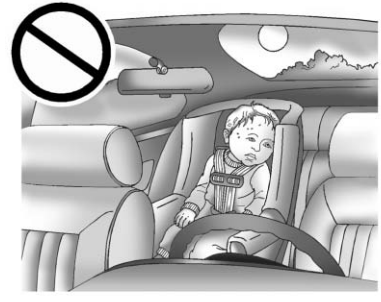
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

If equipped, automatic dimming reduces the glare of headlamps from behind. The dimming feature comes on when the vehicle is started.

Windows

⚠ Warning

Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke.

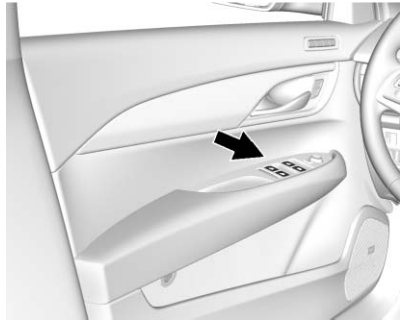


The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when either rear window is down and the front windows are up. To reduce the sound, open either a front window or the sunroof, if equipped.

Power Windows

⚠ Warning

Children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Never leave the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter in a vehicle with children. When there are children in the rear seat, use the window lockout switch to prevent operation of the windows. See *Keys* ⇨ *30*.



Sedan Shown, Coupe Similar

Power windows work when the ignition is on, in ACC/ACCESSORY, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *195*.

Using the window switch, press to open or pull to close the window.

The windows may be temporarily disabled if they are used repeatedly within a short time.

Window Lockout (Sedan Only)

This feature stops the rear door passenger window switches from working.

- Press to engage the rear window lockout feature. The indicator light is on when engaged.
- Press again to disengage.

Window Express Movement

All windows can be opened without holding the window switch. Press the switch down fully and quickly release to express open the window.

If equipped, pull the window switch up fully and quickly release to express close the window.

Briefly press or pull the window switch in the same direction to stop that window's express movement.

Window Automatic Reversal System

The express-close feature will reverse window movement if it comes in contact with an object. Extreme cold or ice could cause the window to auto-reverse. The window will operate normally after the object or condition is removed.

Automatic Reversal System Override

⚠ Warning

If automatic reversal system override is active, the window will not reverse automatically. You or others could be injured and the window could be damaged. Before using automatic reversal system

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

override, make sure that all people and obstructions are clear of the window path.

When the engine is on, override the automatic reversal system by pulling and holding the window switch if conditions prevent it from closing.

Programming the Power Windows

Programming may be necessary if the vehicle battery has been disconnected or discharged. If the window is unable to express-up, program each express-close window:

1. Close all doors.
2. Turn the ignition on or to ACC/ ACCESSORY.
3. Partially open the window to be programmed. Then close it and continue to pull the switch briefly after the window has fully closed.
4. Open the window and continue to press the switch briefly after the window has fully opened.

Remote Window Operation

If equipped, this feature allows all the windows to be opened remotely.
If enabled in vehicle personalization, press and hold 🔓 on the RKE transmitter. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Window Indexing (Coupe Only)

If the window freezes to the door, push the top of the window inward while opening the door. Clear all snow and ice from the door and glass.

Then open the window completely and then close it.

The door can now be closed.

When fully closed, indexing automatically lowers the window a small amount when the door is opened.

When the door is closed, the window will raise to its previous position.
If either window does not index properly, it could be due to loss of power. Before seeing your dealer for service, program the power windows.

Sun Visors

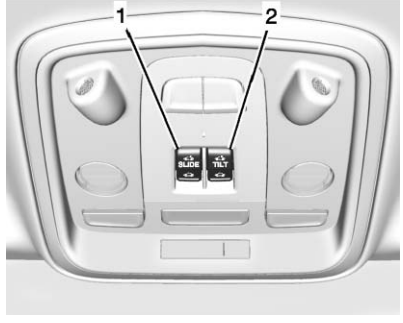
Pull the visor toward you, or move it to the side to help reduce glare.

To use the lighted mirror, lift the cover.

Roof

Sunroof

If equipped, the ignition must be on or in ACC/ACCESSORY, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active to operate the sunroof.
See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *190* and *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *195*.



1. SLIDE Switch
2. TILT Switch

Slide Switch

Express-Open/Express-Close :
Press SLIDE (1) to the second detent and release to express-open the sunroof.
Press (1) to the second detent and release to express-close the sunroof. Press again to stop the movement.

Open/Close (Manual Mode) :
Press SLIDE (1) to the first detent and hold to open the sunroof. Press (1) to the first detent and hold to close the sunroof. Release to stop the movement.

Tilt Switch

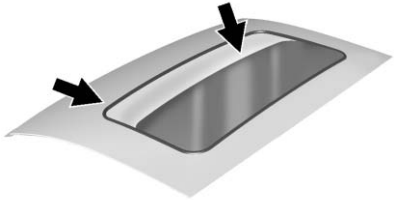
Vent Feature : Press and hold TILT (2) to vent the sunroof. The sunshade must be manually opened. Press and hold (2) to close the sunroof vent.

Automatic Reversal System

The sunroof has an automatic reversal system that is only active when the sunroof is operated in express-close mode.

If an object is in the path while express closing, the reversal system will detect an object, stop, and open the sunroof again.

If frost or other conditions prevent closing, override the feature by closing the sunroof in manual mode. To stop movement, release the switch.



Dirt and debris may collect on the sunroof seal or in the track. This could cause an issue with sunroof operation or noise. It could also plug the water drainage system. Periodically open the sunroof and remove any obstacles or loose debris. Wipe the sunroof seal and roof sealing area using a clean cloth, mild soap, and water. Do not remove grease from the sunroof.

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 55

Front Seats
Easy Entry Seat (Coupe Only) 56
Power Seat Adjustment 57
Lumbar Adjustment 59
Thigh Support Adjustment 60
Reclining Seatbacks 60
Memory Seats 61
Heated Front Seats 64

Rear Seats
Rear Seats (Sedan Only) 66
Rear Seats (Coupe Only) 68
Rear Seat Pass-Through Door 69

Seat Belts
Seat Belts 70
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 71
Lap-Shoulder Belt 72
Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy 74
Seat Belt Extender 75
Safety System Check 75
Seat Belt Care 75
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 76

Airbag System
Airbag System 76
Where Are the Airbags? 78
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 79
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? ... 80
How Does an Airbag Restrain? ... 81
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 81
Passenger Sensing System 82
Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 86
Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 87
Airbag System Check 88
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 88

Child Restraints
Older Children 88
Infants and Young Children 90
Child Restraint Systems 92
Where to Put the Restraint 94
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 95
Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash 101
Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat) 101
Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Seat) 103

Head Restraints

If equipped with base seats, the vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

If equipped with high performance seats, the vehicle's front seats have head restraints in the outboard seating positions that cannot be adjusted.

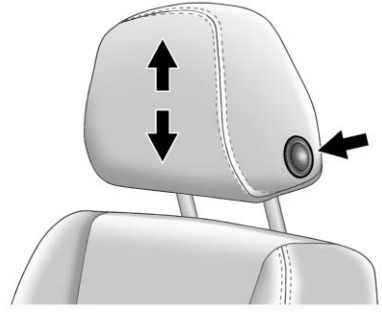
⚠ Warning

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

If equipped with base seats, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

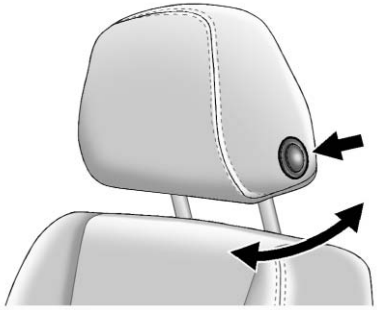
Front Seats

If equipped, the vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.



The height of the head restraint can be adjusted.

To raise or lower the head restraint, press the button located on the side of the head restraint, and pull up or push the head restraint down and release the button. Pull and push on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.



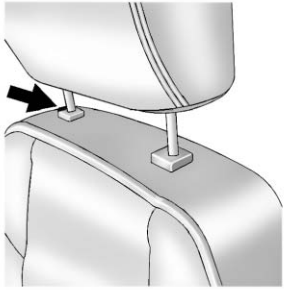
To adjust the head restraint forward and rearward, press the button located on the side facing of the head restraint and move it forward or rearward until the desired locking position is reached. Try to move the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

The front seat outboard head restraints are not removable.

Rear Seats

The vehicle's rear seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

The height of the head restraint can be adjusted. Pull the head restraint up to raise it. Try to move the head restraint to make sure that it is locked in place.



To lower the head restraint, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the head restraint down. Try to move the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

Rear outboard head restraints are not removable.

Front Seats

Easy Entry Seat (Coupe Only)

High Performance Seat

1. Seat Adjustment Switch
2. Folding Seatback Handle

If equipped, the front seats can be moved out of the way to make it easier to get in and out of the rear seat.

To fold the seatback, lift the handle (2) on top of the seatback. The seatback will fold forward.

To move the seat forward, press and hold the front of the switch (1) on the outboard side of the upper seatback. To move the seat rearward, press and hold the rear of the switch (1). Release the switch (1) when the seat reaches the desired position.

After entering or exiting the rear seat, return the seatback to the upright position. Lift the seatback and push it rearward until it locks into place. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

Power Seat Adjustment

High Performance Seat Shown, Others Similar

To adjust the seat:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the seat by moving the rear of the control up or down.
- If equipped, raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.

To adjust the seatback, see *Reclining Seatbacks* ⇨ *60*.

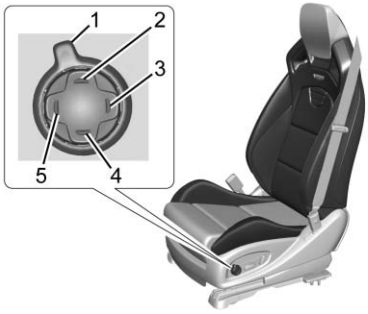
To adjust the lumbar support, see *Lumbar Adjustment* ⇨ *59*.

Some vehicles are equipped with a Safety Alert Seat. This feature activates a vibrating pulse alert in the driver seat to help the driver avoid crashes.

High Performance Seat Adjustment

⚠ Warning

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.



High Performance Seat

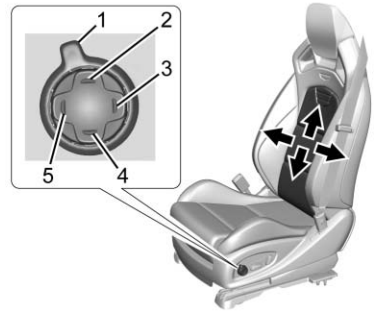
1. Feature Select
2. Up
3. Rearward
4. Down
5. Forward

- Move Feature Select (1) to display seat adjustments on the center stack. Press and release or hold to scroll through features.
- Press Up (2) to make upward adjustments of the selected feature.
- Press Rearward (3) to make rearward adjustments of the selected feature.
- Press Down (4) to make downward adjustments of the selected feature.
- Press Forward (5) to make forward adjustments of the selected feature.

Four-Way Lumbar Support

To adjust lumbar support for a base seat, see *Lumbar Adjustment* ⇨ *59*.

To adjust lumbar support for high performance seats, if equipped:

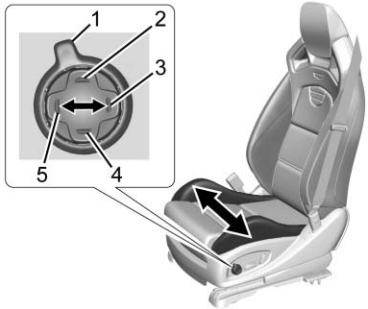


High Performance Seat

- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to lumbar support on the center stack.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust lumbar forward or rearward.
- Press Up (2) or Down (4) to adjust lumbar support up or down.

Cushion Bolster Support

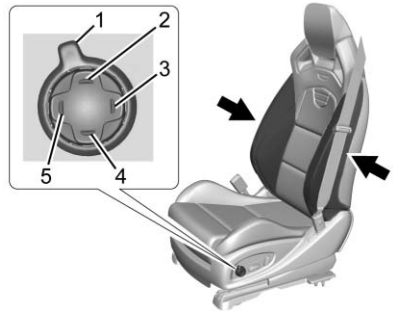
To adjust cushion bolster support, if equipped:



- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to cushion bolster support on the center stack.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust cushion bolster support inward or outward.

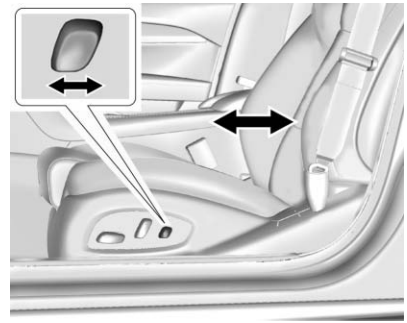
Back Bolster

To adjust back bolster, if equipped:



- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to back bolster on the center stack.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust back bolster inward or outward.

Lumbar Adjustment



Base Seat

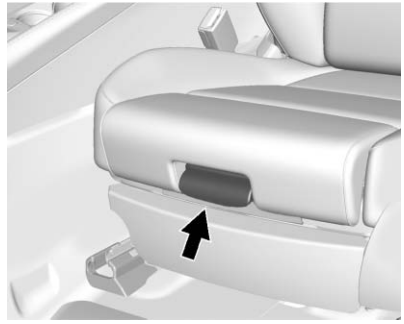
To adjust the lumbar and bolster support:

- Press and hold the control forward or rearward to adjust lumbar support forward or rearward.

Back Bolster Adjustment

If equipped, to increase or decrease the back bolster support, press and hold the lumbar control up and down.

Thigh Support Adjustment



Base Seat

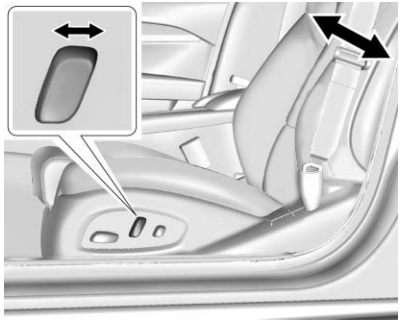
If equipped, pull up on the lever. Then pull or push on the support to lengthen or shorten. Release the lever to lock in place.

Reclining Seatbacks

High Performance Seat

To adjust the seatback:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.



Base Seat

To adjust the seatback:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

⚠ Warning

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the seat belts cannot do their job.

The shoulder belt will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear the seat belt properly.

Do not have a seatback reclined if the vehicle is moving.

Memory Seats

If equipped, memory seats allow two drivers to store and recall their unique seat positions for driving the vehicle, and a shared exit position for getting out of the vehicle. Other feature positions may also be set, such as power mirrors and power steering wheel, if equipped. Memory positions are linked to RKE transmitter 1 or 2 for automatic memory recalls.

Before storing, adjust all available memory feature positions. Turn the ignition on and then press and release SET; a beep will sound. Then immediately press and hold 1, 2, or (Exit) on the driver door until two beeps sound. To manually recall these positions, press and hold 1, 2, or until the saved position is reached.

The vehicle identifies the current driver's RKE transmitter number (1–8). See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*. Only RKE transmitters 1 and 2 can be used for automatic memory recalls. A Driver Information Center (DIC) welcome message indicating the transmitter number may display for the first few ignition cycles following a transmitter change. For Auto Memory Recall to work properly, save the positions to the memory button (1 or 2) matching the RKE transmitter number displayed in the DIC welcome message. Carry the linked RKE transmitter when entering the vehicle.

Vehicle Personalization Settings

- To have the Auto Memory Recall movement begin when the vehicle is started, select the Settings menu, then Vehicle, then Comfort and Convenience, and then Auto Memory Recall. Select On or Off. See "Auto Memory Recall" later in this section.
- To begin Easy Exit Recall movement when the ignition is turned off and the driver door is opened, or when the ignition is turned off with the driver door already opened, select the Settings menu, then Vehicle, then Comfort and Convenience, and then Easy Exit Options. Select On or Off. See "Easy Exit Recall" later in this section.
- See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141* for additional setting information.

Identifying Driver Number

To identify the driver number:

1. Start the vehicle with the other key or RKE transmitter. The DIC should display the driver number; 1 or 2. Turn the ignition off and remove the key or RKE transmitter from the vehicle.
2. Start the vehicle with the initial key or RKE transmitter. The DIC should display the other driver number not shown in step 1.

Saving Memory Positions

Read these instructions completely before saving memory positions.

To save preferred driving positions 1 and 2:

1. Turn the ignition on or to ACC/ ACCESSORY.

   A DIC welcome message may be displayed indicating number 1 or 2 for memory recalls.

2. Adjust all available memory features to the desired driving position.
3. Press and release SET; a beep will sound.
4. Immediately press and hold the 1 or 2 memory button matching the above DIC welcome message until two beeps sound.

   If too much time passes between releasing SET and pressing 1, the memory position will not be saved and two beeps will not sound. Repeat Steps 3 and 4.

   1 or 2 corresponds to the driver number. See “Identifying Driver Number” in this section.
5. Repeat Steps 1–4 for a second driver using 1 or 2.

To save the position for and easy exit features, repeat Steps 1–4 using . This stores the position for getting out of the vehicle.

Save preferred memory feature positions to both 1 and 2 if you are the only driver.

Manually Recalling Memory Positions

Press and hold 1, 2, or to recall the previously stored memory positions.

To stop manual recall movement, release 1, 2, or . Recall can also be stopped by pressing a power seat, SET, power mirror, or power steering wheel control, if memory equipped. The driver or passenger side mirror must be selected.

Auto Memory Recall

The vehicle identifies the number of the current driver’s RKE transmitter (1–8). See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*. If the RKE transmitter is 1 or 2, and Auto Memory Recall is programmed on in vehicle personalization, the positions saved to the same memory button number 1 or 2 are automatically recalled when the ignition is turned on, or turned from off to ACC/ACCESSORY. RKE transmitters 3–8 will not provide automatic memory recalls.

To turn Auto Memory Recall on or off, see "Vehicle Personalization Settings" previously in this section and *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

If equipped with an automatic transmission, the transmission must be in P (Park) to initiate Auto Memory Recall. Auto Memory Recall will complete if the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) prior to reaching the stored memory position.

If equipped with a manual transmission, the parking brake must be set to initiate Auto Memory Recall. Auto Memory Recall will complete if the parking brake is released prior to reaching the stored memory position.

To stop Auto Memory Recall movement, turn the ignition off or press any of the following memory controls:

- Power seat
- Memory SET, 1, 2, or
- Power mirror, with the driver or passenger side mirror selected
- Power steering wheel, if equipped

If the stored memory seat position does not automatically recall or recalls to the wrong positions, the driver's RKE transmitter number (1 or 2) may not match the memory button number that positions were saved to. Try storing the position to the other memory button or try the other RKE transmitter.

Easy Exit Recall

Easy Exit Recall is not linked to an RKE transmitter. The position stored to is used for all drivers. To turn Easy Exit Recall on or off, see "Vehicle Personalization Settings" previously in this section and *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

If turned on, the position saved to is automatically recalled when one of the following occurs:

- The vehicle is turned off and the driver door is opened within a short time.
- The vehicle is turned off with the driver door open.

To stop Easy Exit Recall movement, press any of the following memory controls:

- Power seat
- Memory SET, 1, 2, or
- Power mirror, with the driver or passenger side mirror selected
- Power steering wheel, if equipped

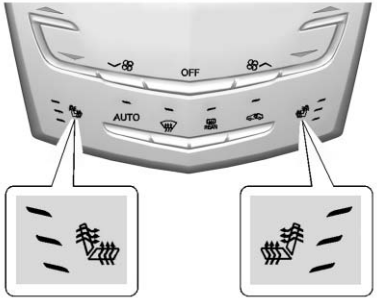
Obstructions

If something has blocked the driver seat and/or power steering wheel while recalling a memory position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction and try the recall again. If the memory position still does not recall, see your dealer for service.

Heated Front Seats

⚠ Warning

If temperature change or pain to the skin cannot be felt, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.



Uplevel Buttons Shown, Base Buttons Similar

If equipped, the buttons are near the climate controls on the center stack. To operate, the ignition must be on.

Press / or / to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting.

The indicator lights next to the buttons indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest. If the heated seats are on high, the level may automatically be lowered after approximately 30 minutes.

When this feature is off, the heated seat symbol on the button is white. When the heated seat is turned on, the symbol turns red.

The passenger seat may take longer to heat up.

Auto Heated Seats

If the vehicle is equipped with auto heated seats, and the ignition is on, this feature will automatically activate the heated seats at the level required by the vehicle's interior temperature.

The active high, medium, low, or off heated seat level will be indicated by the manual heated seat buttons on the center stack. Use the manual heated seat buttons on the center stack to turn the auto heated seats off.

If the passenger seat is unoccupied, the auto heated seats feature will not activate that seat. The auto heated seats feature can be programmed to always be enabled when the vehicle is on. If equipped with a heated steering wheel, the auto heated steering wheel activation will follow the heated seat auto activation and the heated wheel indicator will follow the state of the steering wheel heat.

See *Vehicle Personalization* ➪ *141*.

Remote Start Heated Seats

If equipped, the heated seats will turn on automatically during a remote start if it is cold outside. If equipped, the heated steering wheel will turn on automatically during a remote start if it is cold outside. The heated seat indicators and heated steering wheel indicator may not come on during this operation.

The heated seats and heated steering wheel may cancel when the vehicle is started. These features can be manually selected after the ignition is turned on.

The temperature performance of an unoccupied seat may be reduced. This is normal.

The heated seats will not turn on during a remote start unless they are enabled in the vehicle personalization menu.
See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *37* and *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Rear Seats

Rear Seats (Sedan Only)

Rear Seat Reminder

If equipped, the message REAR SEAT REMINDER LOOK IN REAR SEAT displays under certain conditions indicating there may be an item or passenger in the rear seat. Check before exiting the vehicle.

This feature will activate when a second row door is opened while the vehicle is on or up to 10 minutes before the vehicle is turned on. There will be an alert when the vehicle is turned off. The alert does not directly detect objects in the rear seat; instead, under certain conditions, it detects when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seat.

The feature is active only once each time the vehicle is turned on and off, and will require reactivation by opening and closing the second row doors. There may be an alert even when there is nothing in the rear seat; for example, if a child entered the vehicle through the rear door and left the vehicle without the vehicle being shut off.

The feature can be turned on or off.
See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

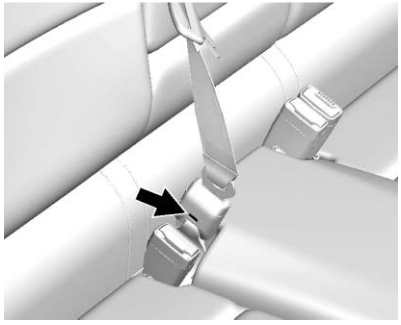
Folding the Seatback

Either side of the seatback can be folded for more cargo space. Fold a seatback only when the vehicle is not moving.

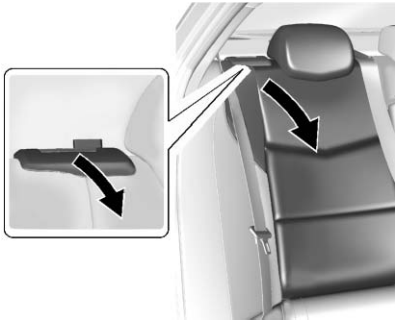
Caution

Folding a rear seat with the seat belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the seat belts. Always unbuckle the seat belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

To fold the seatback:



1. Disconnect the rear seat belt mini-latch using a key in the slot on the mini-buckle, and let the belt retract.



2. Pull the lever on top of the seatback toward you to unlock the seatback.

   A red tab near the seatback lever raises when the seatback is unlocked.

3. Fold the seatback forward.

   Repeat Steps 2 and 3 to fold the other seatback, if desired.

Raising the Seatback

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

⚠ Warning

A seat belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the seat belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To raise a seatback:

1. Lift the seatback up. Make sure the center seat belt and latch do not get trapped behind the seat. Push the seatback rearward to lock it in place.

   A red tab near the seatback lever retracts when the seatback is locked in place.

2. Push and pull the top of the seatback to be sure it is locked into position.

3. Reconnect the center seat belt mini-latch to the mini-buckle. Do not let the belt twist.
4. Pull on the center seat belt to make sure the mini-latch is secure.
5. Repeat the steps to raise the other seatback, if necessary.

When the seat is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

Rear Seats (Coupe Only)

Folding the Seatback

Either side of the seatback can be folded for more cargo space. Fold a seatback only when the vehicle is not moving.

Caution

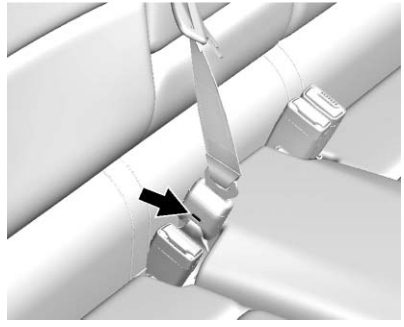
Folding a rear seat with the seat belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the seat belts. Always unbuckle the seat

(Continued)

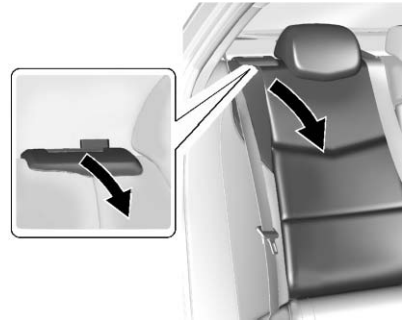
Caution (Continued)

belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

To fold the seatback:



1. Disconnect the rear seat belt mini-latch using a key in the slot on the mini-buckle, and let the belt retract.



2. Pull the lever on top of the seatback toward you to unlock the seatback.

   A red tab near the seatback lever raises when the seatback is unlocked.
3. Fold the seatback forward.

   Repeat Steps 2 and 3 to fold the other seatback, if desired.

Raising the Seatback

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

⚠ Warning

A seat belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the seat belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To raise a seatback:

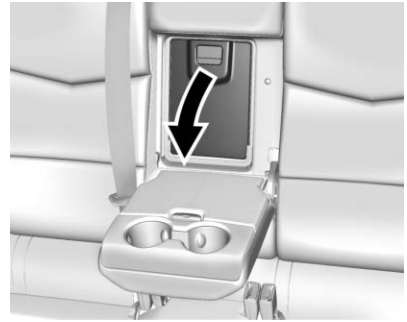
1. Lift the seatback up. Make sure the center seat belt and latch do not get trapped behind the seat. Push the seatback rearward to lock it in place.

   A red tab near the seatback lever retracts when the seatback is locked in place.

2. Push and pull the top of the seatback to be sure it is locked into position.
3. Reconnect the center seat belt mini-latch to the mini-buckle. Do not let the belt twist.
4. Pull on the center seat belt to make sure the mini-latch is secure.
5. Repeat the steps to raise the other seatback, if necessary.

When the seat is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

Rear Seat Pass-Through Door



This vehicle may have a rear seat pass-through door in the center of the rear seatback. Fold down the center armrest and pull the latch to open the door.

Seat Belts

This section describes how to use seat belts properly, and some things not to do.

⚠ Warning

Do not let anyone ride where a seat belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing seat belts, injuries can be much worse than if you are wearing seat belts. You can be seriously injured or killed by hitting things inside the vehicle harder or by being ejected from the vehicle. In addition, anyone who is not buckled up can strike other passengers in the vehicle.

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, passengers riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do

(Continued)

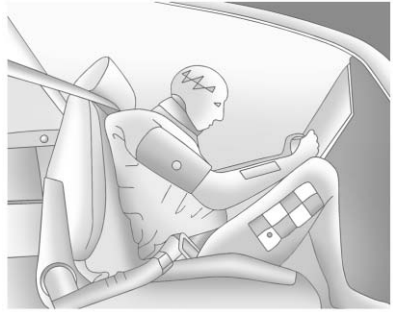
Warning (Continued)

not allow passengers to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.

Always wear a seat belt, and check that all passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the seat belts. See *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *123*.

Why Seat Belts Work



When riding in a vehicle, you travel as fast as the vehicle does. If the vehicle stops suddenly, you keep going until something stops you. It could be the windshield, the instrument panel, or the seat belts!

When you wear a seat belt, you and the vehicle slow down together. There is more time to stop because you stop over a longer distance and, when worn properly, your strongest bones take the forces from the seat belts. That is why wearing seat belts makes such good sense.

Questions and Answers About Seat Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a seat belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a seat belt or not. Your chance of being conscious during and after a crash, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted.

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear seat belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only. They work *with* seat belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection.

Also, in nearly all states and in all Canadian provinces, the law requires wearing seat belts.

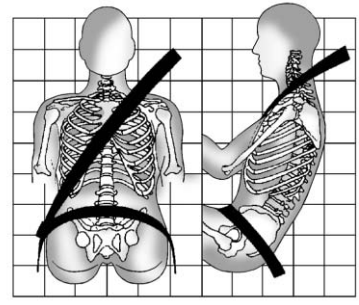
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly

This section is only for people of adult size.

There are special things to know about seat belts and children, and there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see *Older Children* ⇨ *88* or *Infants and Young Children* ⇨ *90*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing seat belts.

There are important things to know about wearing a seat belt properly.



- Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you.
- Always use the correct buckle for your seating position.
- Wear the lap part of the belt low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.
- Wear the shoulder belt over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces. The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

⚠ Warning

You can be seriously injured, or even killed, by not wearing your seat belt properly.

- Never allow the lap or shoulder belt to become loose or twisted.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under both arms or behind your back.
- Never route the lap or shoulder belt over an armrest.

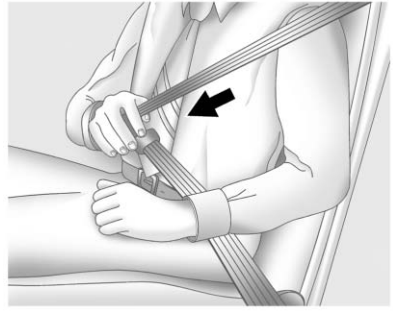
Lap-Shoulder Belt

All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt.

On sedan models, if you are using a rear center seating position with a detachable seat belt and the seat belt is not attached, see “Folding the Seatback” under *Rear Seats (Sedan Only)* ⇨ *66* or *Rear Seats (Coupe Only)* ⇨ *68* for instructions on reconnecting the seat belt to the mini-buckle.

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.

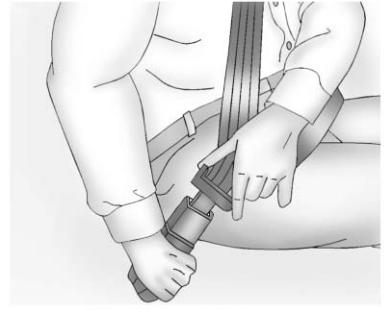


2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

   If the shoulder portion of a passenger belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.

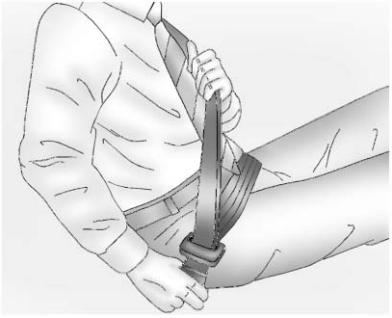
   If the webbing locks in the latch plate before it reaches the buckle, tilt the latch plate flat to unlock.



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

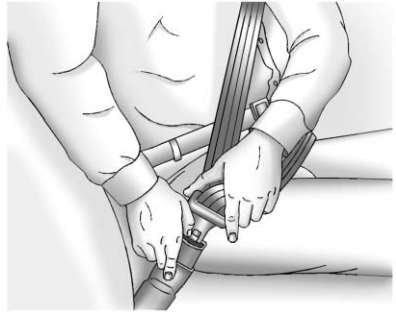
   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt is not long enough, see *Seat Belt Extender* ⇨ *75*.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



4. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

   On sedan models, it may be necessary to pull stitching on the seat belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.



To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position.

Always stow the seat belt slowly. If the seat belt webbing returns quickly to the stowed position, the retractor may lock and cannot be pulled out. If this happens, pull the seat belt straight out firmly to unlock the webbing, and then release it. If the webbing is still locked in the retractor, see your dealer.

Before a door is closed, be sure the seat belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a seat belt, damage can occur to both the seat belt and the vehicle.

Automatic Seat Belt Tightening System

The vehicle may have the Automatic Seat Belt Tightening System.

Each time the vehicle is started with the front seat belts buckled, the system activates once to tighten the seat belts when the forward vehicle speed exceeds the threshold for activation.

The system also activates during emergency braking and/or sudden driving maneuvers and releases when driving conditions return to normal.

The system turns off whenever Competitive Driving Mode is activated, and will turn back on when

Competitive Driving Mode is deactivated. See *Competitive Driving Mode (FE3 Only)* ⇨ *214*.

The system will not activate if the Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control system is not functioning properly. See *Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *209*. If there is a problem with the Automatic Seat Belt Tightening System, a message displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC). If a system unavailable message displays repeatedly or a service message displays, see your dealer. Other seat belt functions are not affected by the Automatic Seat Belt Tightening System.

Seat Belt Pretensioners

This vehicle has seat belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although the seat belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the seat belt assembly. They can help tighten the seat belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal, near frontal, or rear crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met. Seat belt pretensioners can also help tighten the seat belts in a side crash or a rollover event.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, the pretensioners and probably other parts of the vehicle's seat belt system will need to be replaced. See *Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash* ⇨ *76*.

Do not sit on the outboard seat belt while entering or exiting the vehicle or at any time while sitting in the seat. Sitting on the seat belt can damage the webbing and hardware.

Rear Seat Belt Comfort Guides

Rear seat belt comfort guides may provide added seat belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide positions the shoulder belt away from the neck and head.

Comfort guides are available through your dealer for the rear outboard seating positions. Instructions are included with the guide.

Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear seat belts.

A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a seat belt is worn properly, it is more likely that

the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making seat belts effective is wearing them properly.

Seat Belt Extender

If the vehicle's seat belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a seat belt is not long enough, your dealer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child restraints. For more information on the proper use and fit of seat belt extenders see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

Safety System Check

Periodically check the seat belt reminder, seat belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), and seat belt anchorages to make sure they are all in working order. Look for any other loose or damaged seat belt system parts that might keep a seat belt system from performing properly. See your dealer to have it repaired. Torn or frayed seat belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, have it replaced immediately.

Make sure the seat belt reminder light is working. See *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *123*.

Keep seat belts clean and dry. See *Seat Belt Care* ⇨ *75*.

Seat Belt Care

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ Warning

Do not bleach or dye seat belt webbing. It may severely weaken the webbing. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean and rinse seat belt

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

webbing only with mild soap and lukewarm water. Allow the webbing to dry.

Seat belts should be properly cared for and maintained.

Seat belt hardware should be kept dry and free of dust or debris. As necessary exterior hard surfaces and seat belt webbing may be lightly cleaned with mild soap and water. Ensure there is not excessive dust or debris in the mechanism. If dust or debris exists in the system please see the dealer. Parts may need to be replaced to ensure proper functionality of the system.

Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

A crash can damage the seat belt system in the vehicle. A damaged seat belt system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the seat belt systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

After a minor crash, replacement of seat belts may not be necessary. But the seat belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer to have the seat belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the seat belt system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Have the seat belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, or if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *124*.

Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver
- A frontal airbag for the front outboard passenger
- A knee airbag for the driver
- A knee airbag for the front outboard passenger
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the front outboard passenger
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver
- A roof-rail airbag for the front outboard passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the front outboard passenger

Sedan models may have the following airbags:

- Seat-mounted side impact airbags for the second row outboard passengers

All vehicle airbags have the word AIRBAG on the trim or on a label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the center of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the front outboard passenger.

For knee airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the lower part of the instrument panel.

For seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

For roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the ceiling or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by seat belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ Warning

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your seat belt, even with airbags. Airbags are designed to work with seat belts, not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to inflate in every crash. In some crashes seat belts are the only restraint. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* ⇨ *79*.

Wearing your seat belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are “supplemental restraints” to the seat belts. Everyone in the vehicle should wear a seat belt properly, whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ Warning

Because airbags inflate with great force and faster than the blink of an eye, anyone who is up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to any airbag, as you would be if sitting on the edge of the seat or leaning forward. Seat belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear a seat belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. The seat belts and the front outboard passenger airbags are most effective when you are sitting well back and upright in the seat with both feet on the floor.

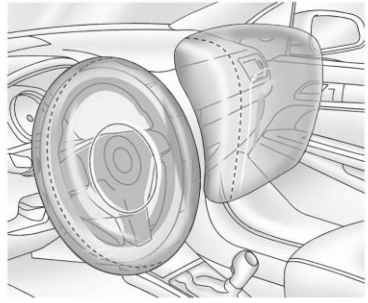
Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

⚠ Warning

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Always secure children properly in the vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children* ⇨ *88* or *Infants and Young Children* ⇨ *90*.

There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument cluster, which shows the airbag symbol. The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *124*.

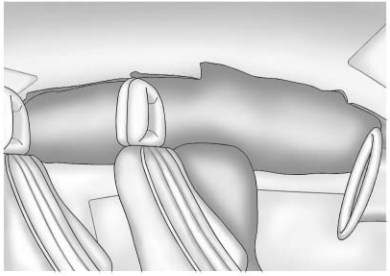
Where Are the Airbags?



The driver frontal airbag is in the center of the steering wheel.

The front outboard passenger frontal airbag is in the passenger side instrument panel.

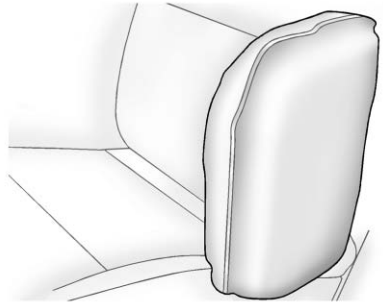
The driver knee airbag is below the steering column. The front outboard passenger knee airbag is below the glove box.



Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

The seat-mounted side impact airbags for the driver and front outboard passenger are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.

The roof-rail airbags for the driver, front outboard passenger, and second row outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.



Rear Seat Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

On vehicles with second row seat-mounted side impact airbags, they are in the sides of the rear seatback closest to the door.

⚠ Warning

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Do not use seat accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie-down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

This vehicle is equipped with airbags. See *Airbag System* ⇨ *76*. Airbags are designed to inflate if the impact exceeds the specific airbag system's deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how

severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants. The vehicle has electronic frontal sensors that help the airbag system determine the severity of the impact. Deployment thresholds can vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries, mainly to the driver's or front outboard passenger's head and chest.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should inflate is not based primarily on how fast the vehicle is traveling. It depends on what is hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds depending on whether the vehicle hits an object straight on or at an angle, and whether the object is fixed or moving, rigid or deformable, narrow or wide.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, in rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

In addition, the vehicle has advanced technology frontal airbags. Advanced technology frontal airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity.

Knee airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal impacts. Knee airbags are not designed to inflate during vehicle rollovers, in rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

The vehicle also has a seat position sensor that enables the sensing system to monitor the position of the front outboard passenger seat. The passenger seat position sensor and the passenger seat belt buckle provide information that is used to determine if the passenger knee airbag should inflate.

Seat-mounted side impact airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes, depending on the location of the impact. Seat-mounted side impact airbags are not designed to inflate in frontal impacts, near-frontal impacts, rollovers, or rear impacts. A seat-mounted side impact airbag is designed to inflate on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

Roof-rail airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes, depending on the location of the impact. In addition, these roof-rail airbags are designed to inflate during a rollover or in a severe frontal impact. Roof-rail airbags are not designed to inflate in rear impacts. Both roof-rail airbags will inflate when either side of the vehicle is struck or if the sensing system predicts that the vehicle is about to roll over on its side, or in a severe frontal impact.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the vehicle damage or repair costs.

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of

the cover. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

For airbag locations, see *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *78*.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by seat belts by distributing the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's body.

Rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help contain the head and chest of occupants in the outboard seating positions in the first and second rows. The rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help reduce the risk of full or partial ejection in rollover events, although no system can prevent all such ejections.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* ⇨ *79*.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to seat belts.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

After frontal, knee, and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize the airbags inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they inflate. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *78*.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn on the interior lamps and hazard warning flashers, and shut off the fuel system after the airbags inflate. The feature may also activate, without airbag inflation, after an event that exceeds a predetermined threshold. After turning the ignition off and then on again, the fuel system will return to normal operation; the doors can be locked, the interior lamps can be turned off, and the hazard warning flashers can be turned off using the controls for those features. If any of these systems are damaged in the crash they may not operate as normal.

⚠ Warning

A crash severe enough to inflate the airbags may have also damaged important functions in the vehicle, such as the fuel system, brake and steering systems, etc. Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after a moderate crash, there may be

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

concealed damage that could make it difficult to safely operate the vehicle.

Use caution if you should attempt to restart the engine after a crash has occurred.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the front outboard passenger airbag.

- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for the vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- The vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy* ⇨ *365* and *Event Data Recorders* ⇨ *366*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

Passenger Sensing System

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the front outboard passenger position. The passenger airbag status indicator will light on the overhead console when the vehicle is started.

United States

Canada and Mexico

The words ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, will be visible during the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or OFF, or the symbol for on or off, will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *124*.

The passenger sensing system turns off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, under certain conditions. No other airbag is affected by the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front outboard passenger seat. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag should be allowed to inflate or not.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly secured in a rear seat in the correct child restraint for their weight and size.

Whenever possible, children aged 12 and under should be secured in a rear seating position.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag inflates.

⚠ Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger frontal airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

killed if the passenger frontal airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger airbag(s), no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag(s) are off.

Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat, even if the airbag is off. If securing a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard passenger seat, always move the seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure child restraints in the rear seat. Consider using another vehicle to transport the child when a rear seat is not available.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag if:

- The front outboard passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A front outboard passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- There is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, the off indicator will light and stay lit as a reminder that the airbags are off. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *124*.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn on the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front outboard passenger seat.

When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbags to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit as a reminder that the airbags are active.

For some children, including children in child restraints, and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in the vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a seat belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *124* for more information, including important safety information.

If the On Indicator Is Lit for a Child Restraint

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag if the system determines that an infant is present in a child restraint. If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle.
3. Remove any additional items from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
4. Reinstall the child restraint following the directions provided by the child restraint

manufacturer and refer to *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat)* ➪ *101* or *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Seat)* ➪ *103*.

5. If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, turn the vehicle off. Then slightly recline the vehicle seatback and adjust the seat cushion, if adjustable, to make sure that the vehicle seatback is not pushing the child restraint into the seat cushion.

   Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints* ➪ *55*.

6. Restart the vehicle.

   The passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the airbags for a child in a child restraint depending upon the child's size. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat, even if the on indicator is not lit.

If the Off Indicator Is Lit for an Adult-Sized Occupant

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front outboard passenger seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat. Use the following steps to allow the system to detect that person and enable the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove any additional material from the seat, such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers. Also, remove laptops, or other electronic devices.
3. Place the seatback in the fully upright position.
4. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with legs comfortably extended.
5. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for two to three minutes after the on indicator is lit.

⚠ Warning

If the front outboard passenger airbag is turned off for an adult-sized occupant, the airbag will not be able to inflate and help protect that person in a crash, resulting in an increased risk of

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

serious injury or even death. An adult-sized occupant should not ride in the front outboard passenger seat, if the passenger airbag off indicator is lit.

Additional Factors Affecting System Operation

Seat belts help keep the passenger in position on the seat during vehicle maneuvers and braking, which helps the passenger sensing system maintain the passenger airbag status. See “Seat Belts” and “Child Restraints” in the Index for additional information about the importance of proper restraint use.

A thick layer of additional material, such as a blanket or cushion, or aftermarket equipment such as seat covers, seat heaters, and seat massagers can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. We recommend that you not use seat covers or other aftermarket equipment except when approved by GM for your specific vehicle. See *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *87* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

A wet seat can affect the performance of the passenger sensing system. Here is how:

- The passenger sensing system may turn off the passenger frontal airbag and passenger knee airbag when liquid is soaked into the seat. If this happens, the off indicator will be lit, and the airbag readiness light on the instrument panel will also be lit.
- Liquid pooled on the seat that has not soaked in may make it more likely that the passenger sensing system will turn on the passenger frontal airbag and passenger knee airbag while a child restraint or child occupant is on the seat. If the passenger frontal airbag and passenger knee airbag are turned on, the on indicator will be lit.

If the passenger seat gets wet, dry the seat immediately. If the airbag readiness light is lit, do not install a child restraint or allow anyone to occupy the seat. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *124* for important safety information.

The on indicator may be lit if an object, such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device, is put on an unoccupied seat. If this is not desired, remove the object from the seat.

⚠ Warning

Stowing articles under the passenger seat or between the passenger seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around

the vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information* ⇨ *363*.

⚠ Warning

For up to 10 seconds after the vehicle is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Adding accessories that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end, or side sheet metal may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, seat belts, airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, inner door seals including the speakers, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar garnish trim, overhead console, front sensors, side impact sensors, or airbag wiring.

Your dealer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag sensors, sensing and diagnostic module, and airbag wiring.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the front outboard passenger position, which includes sensors that are part of the passenger seat. The passenger sensing system may not operate properly if the original seat trim is replaced with non-GM covers, upholstery, or trim; or with GM covers, upholstery, or trim designed for a different vehicle. Any object, such as an aftermarket seat heater or a comfort-enhancing pad or device, installed under or on top of the seat fabric, could also interfere with the operation of the passenger sensing system. This could either prevent proper deployment of the passenger airbag(s) or prevent the passenger sensing system from properly turning off the passenger airbag(s). See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *82*.

If the vehicle has rollover roof-rail airbags, see *Different Size Tires and Wheels* ⇨ *307* for additional important information.

If you have to modify your vehicle because you have a disability and have questions about whether the modifications will affect the vehicle's airbag system, or if you have questions about whether the airbag system will be affected if the vehicle is modified for any other reason, call Customer Assistance. See *Customer Assistance Offices* ⇨ *356*.

Airbag System Check

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *124*.

Caution

If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag coverings, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *78*. See your dealer for service.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

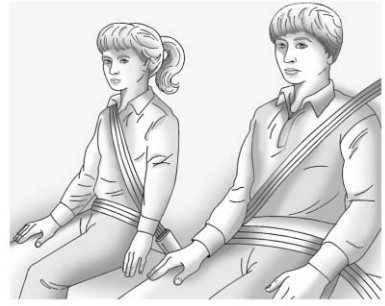
A crash can damage the airbag systems in the vehicle. A damaged airbag system may not properly protect you and your passenger(s) in a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death. To help make sure the airbag systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See your dealer for service.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on when you are driving, the airbag system may not work properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *124*.

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's seat belts.

The manufacturer instructions that come with the booster seat state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the fit test below:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, try using the rear seat belt comfort guide, if available. See "Rear Seat Belt Comfort Guides" under *Lap-Shoulder Belt* ⇨ *72*. If a comfort guide is not available, or if the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper seat belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

Q: What is the proper way to wear seat belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

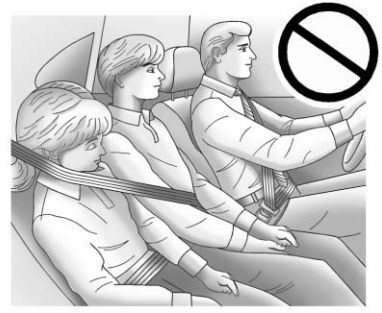
Also see "Rear Seat Belt Comfort Guides" under *Lap-Shoulder Belt* ⇨ *72*.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in a rear seating position.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use seat belts properly.

⚠ Warning

Never allow more than one child to wear the same seat belt. The seat belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, they can be crushed together and seriously injured. A seat belt must be used by only one person at a time.



⚠ Warning

Never allow a child to wear the seat belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck. The shoulder belt can tighten but cannot be loosened if it is locked. The shoulder belt locks when it is pulled all the way out of the retractor. It unlocks when the shoulder belt is allowed to go all the way back into the retractor, but it cannot do this if it is wrapped around a child's neck. If the shoulder belt is locked and tightened around a child's neck, the only way to loosen the belt is to cut it.

Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the seat belts.

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints. Neither the vehicle's seat belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them.

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 5.5 kg (12 lb) infant will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lb) force on a person's arms. An infant or child should be secured in an appropriate restraint.

⚠ Warning

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front outboard seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Child restraints are devices used to restrain, seat, or position children in the vehicle and are sometimes called child seats or car seats.

There are three basic types of child restraints:

- Forward-facing child restraints
- Rearward-facing child restraints
- Belt-positioning booster seats

The proper child restraint for your child depends on their size, weight, and age, and also on whether the child restraint is compatible with the vehicle in which it will be used.

For each type of child restraint, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards. The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

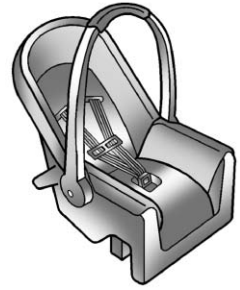
⚠ Warning

To reduce the risk of neck and head injury in a crash, infants and toddlers should be secured in a rear-facing child restraint until age two, or until they reach the maximum height and weight limits of their child restraint.

⚠ Warning

A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular seat belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

Child Restraint Systems



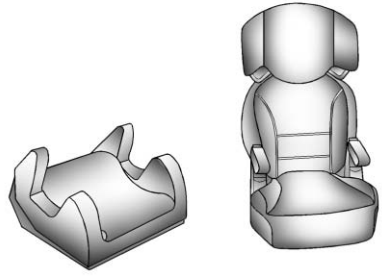
Rear-Facing Infant Restraint

A rear-facing child restraint provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.

Forward-Facing Child Restraint

A forward-facing child restraint provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.



Booster Seats

A belt-positioning booster seat is used for children who have outgrown their forward-facing child restraint. Boosters are designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system until the child is large enough for the vehicle seat belts to fit properly without a booster seat. See the seat belt fit test in *Older Children* ⇨ *88*.

Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

⚠ Warning

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle's seat belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraints must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *95* for more information. Children can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

In some areas of the United States and Canada, Certified Child Passenger Safety Technicians (CPSTs) are available to inspect and demonstrate how to correctly use and install child restraints. In the U.S., refer to the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) website to locate the nearest child safety seat inspection station. For CPST availability in Canada, check with Transport Canada or the Provincial Ministry of Transportation office.

Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

⚠ Warning

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

Where to Put the Restraint

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in an appropriate child restraint secured in a rear seating position.

Whenever possible, children aged 12 and under should be secured in a rear seating position.

Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great if the airbag deploys.

⚠ Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, always move the front passenger

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *82* for additional information.

When securing a child restraint with the seat belts in a rear seat position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Child restraints and booster seats vary considerably in size, and some may fit in certain seating positions better than others.

Depending on where you place the child restraint and the size of the child restraint, you may not be able to access adjacent seat belts or LATCH anchors for additional passengers or child restraints. Adjacent seating positions should not be used if the child restraint prevents access to or interferes with the routing of the seat belt.

Wherever a child restraint is installed, be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint system and secure the child restraint system properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)

The LATCH system secures a child restraint during driving or in a crash. LATCH attachments on the child restraint are used to attach the child restraint to the anchors in the vehicle. The LATCH system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier.

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. LATCH-compatible rear-facing and forward-facing child seats can be properly installed using either the LATCH anchors or the vehicle's seat belts. Do not use both the seat belts and the LATCH anchorage system to secure a rear-facing or forward-facing child seat.

Booster seats use the vehicle's seat belts to secure the child and the booster seat. If the manufacturer recommends that the booster seat be secured with the LATCH system, this can be done as long as the booster seat can be positioned properly and there is no interference with the proper positioning of the lap-shoulder belt on the child.

Make sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.

When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the seat belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether and anchor.

The LATCH anchorage system can be used until the combined weight of the child plus the child restraint is 29.5 kg (65 lbs). Use the seat belt alone instead of the LATCH anchorage system once the combined weight is more than 29.5 kg (65 lbs).

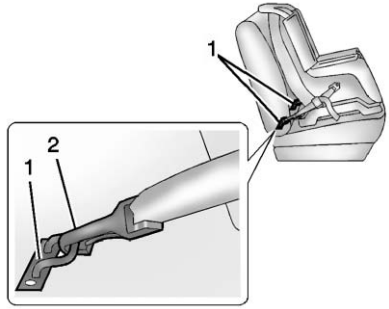
See *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat)* ⇨ *101* or *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Seat)* ⇨ *103*.

Child restraints built after March 2014 will be labeled with the specific child weight up to which the LATCH system can be used to install the restraint.

The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in the vehicle.

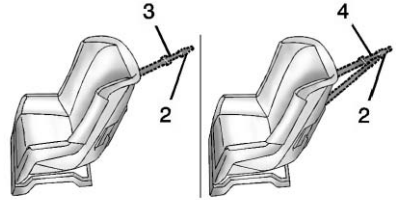
Not all vehicle seating positions have lower anchors. In this case, the seat belt must be used (with top tether where available) to secure the child restraint.
See *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat)* ⇨ *101* or *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Seat)* ⇨ *103*.

Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (1) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (2).

Top Tether Anchor

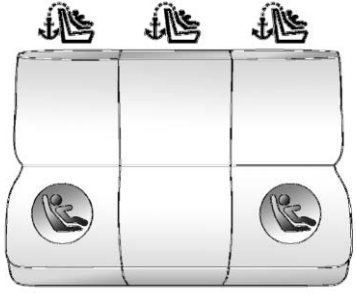


A top tether (3,4) is used to secure the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment hook (2) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.

The child restraint may have a single tether (3) or a dual tether (4). Either will have a single attachment hook (2) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Some child restraints with top tethers are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

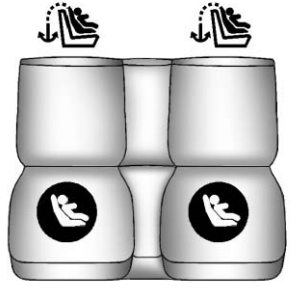
Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations



Rear Seat (Sedan)

: Seating positions with top tether anchors.

: Seating positions with two lower anchors.



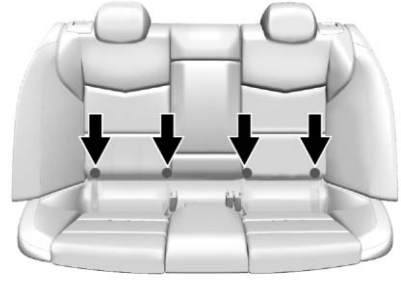
Rear Seat (Coupe)

: Seating positions with top tether anchors.

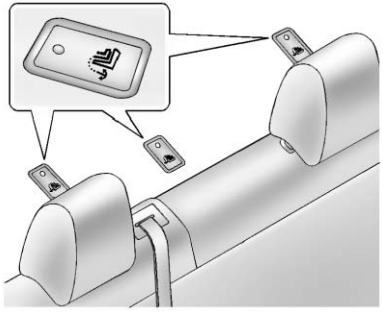
: Seating positions with two lower anchors.

To assist in locating the lower anchors, each seating position with lower anchors has two labels, near the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.

To assist in locating the top tether anchors, the top tether anchor symbol is on the cover.



The outboard lower anchors are behind the vertical openings in the seat trim.



Sedan Shown, Coupe Similar

The top tether anchors are behind the rear seat, on the filler panel. Open the covers to access the anchors. Be sure to use an anchor on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position. See *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *94* for additional information.

Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

⚠ Warning

A child could be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly attached to the vehicle using either the LATCH anchors or the vehicle seat belt. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

⚠ Warning

To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured.

⚠ Warning

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck. The shoulder belt can tighten but cannot be loosened if it is locked. The shoulder belt locks when it is pulled all the way out of the retractor. It unlocks when the shoulder belt is allowed to go all the way back into the retractor, but

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

it cannot do this if it is wrapped around a child's neck. If the shoulder belt is locked and tightened around a child's neck, the only way to loosen the belt is to cut it.

Buckle any unused seat belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, and tighten the belt behind the child restraint after the child restraint has been installed.

Caution

Do not let the LATCH attachments rub against the vehicle's seat belts. This may damage these parts.
If necessary, move buckled seat belts to avoid rubbing the LATCH attachments.

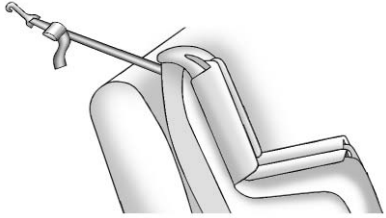
(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

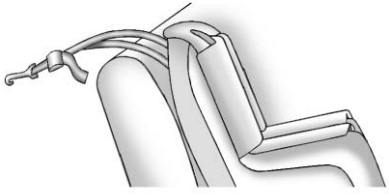
Do not fold the rear seatback when the seat is occupied. Do not fold the empty rear seat with a seat belt buckled. This could damage the seat belt or the seat. Unbuckle and return the seat belt to its stowed position, before folding the seat.

If you need to secure more than one child restraint in the rear seat, see *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *94*.

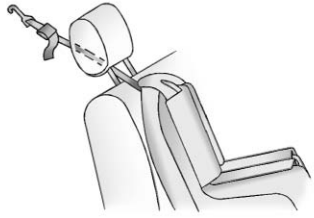
1. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the seat belts. Refer to the child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
   1.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.
   1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
   1.3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor, if equipped. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   2.1. Find the top tether anchor.
   2.2. Open the top tether anchor cover to expose the anchor.
   2.3. Route, attach, and tighten the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



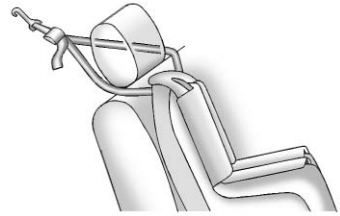
If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the seatback.



If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether over the seatback.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the headrest or head restraint and route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, raise the headrest or head restraint and route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and around the headrest or head restraint posts.

3. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the LATCH path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. There should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement for proper installation.

Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash

⚠ Warning

A crash can damage the LATCH system in the vehicle. A damaged LATCH system may not properly secure the child restraint, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the LATCH system is working properly after a crash, see your dealer to have the system inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If the vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, new LATCH system parts may be needed.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the LATCH system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat)

When securing a child restraint with the seat belts in a rear seat position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

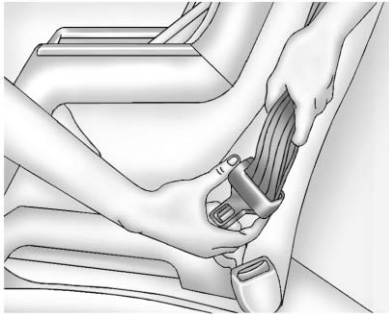
If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *95* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured in the vehicle using a seat belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *95* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

If the child restraint or vehicle seat position does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the seat belt to secure the child restraint. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *94*.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle seat belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

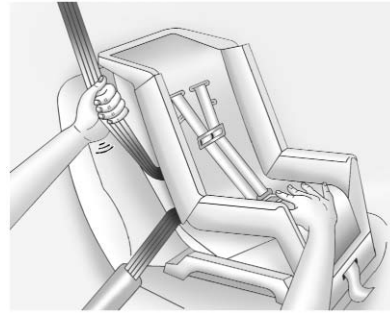


Tilt the latch plate to adjust the belt, if needed.

3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. If the latch plate will not go fully into the buckle, check if the correct buckle is being used.

   Position the release button on the buckle, away from the child restraint system, so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

4. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 4 and 5.

6. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *95*.
7. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the seat belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle seat belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Seat)

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *94*.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag under certain conditions. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *82* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *124* for more information, including important safety information.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front outboard

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

passenger frontal airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger airbag(s), no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag(s) are off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag(s) are off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard passenger seat,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

always move the seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *82* for additional information.

If the child restraint uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *95* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

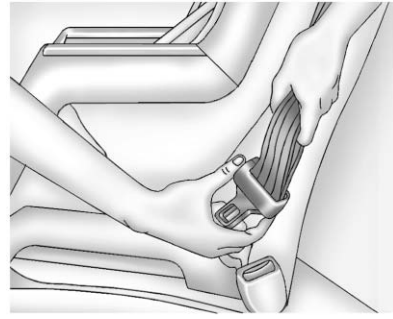
When using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position, follow the instructions that came with the child restraint and the following instructions:

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint. Move the seat upward or the seatback to an upright position, if needed, to get a tight installation of the child restraint.

   When the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, the off indicator on the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *124*.

2. Put the child restraint on the seat.

3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's seat belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

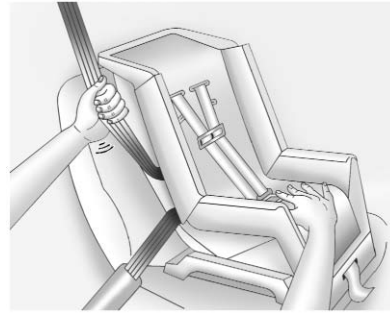


   Tilt the latch plate to adjust the belt if needed.

4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle, away from the child restraint system, so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

5. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.

7. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the seat belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

If the airbags are off, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator will come on and stay on when the vehicle is started.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, see "If the On Indicator Is Lit for a Child Restraint" under *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *82*.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle seat belt and let it return to the stowed position.

Storage

Storage Compartments

Storage Compartments 107
Instrument Panel Storage 107
Glove Box 107
Cupholders 108
Armrest Storage 108
Center Console Storage 108

Additional Storage Features

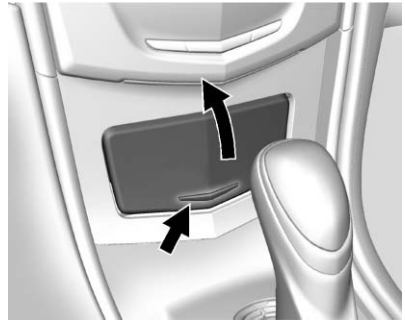
Cargo Tie-Downs 109

Storage Compartments

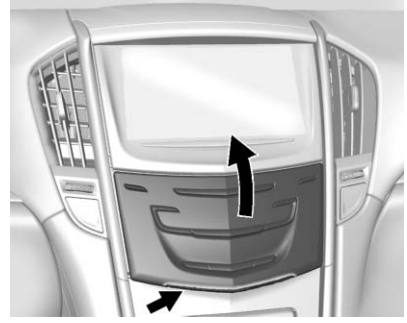
⚠ Warning

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

Instrument Panel Storage



To access, press on the cover and release. There is an accessory power outlet inside. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *114*.



If equipped with storage behind the climate control system, touch the bottom of the climate control panel until the door starts to open. Touch the bottom of the climate control panel again until the door automatically starts to close.

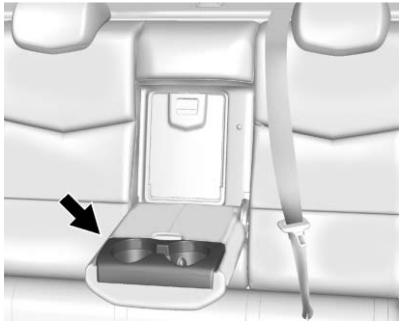
Keep the storage bin closed while driving.

Glove Box

To open the glove box, lift up on the lever. Use the key to lock and unlock it. The glove box may have a compact disc player inside.

Cupholders

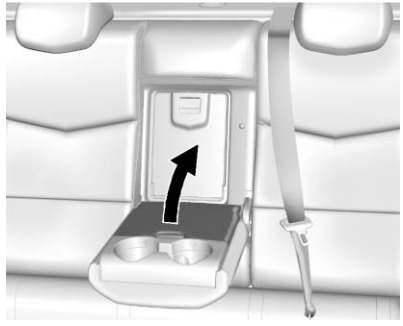
There are two cupholders in the front center console.



Rear Cupholders

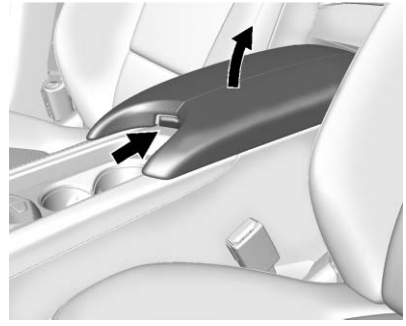
Pull the armrest down to access the rear cupholders.

Armrest Storage



Pull the armrest down and lift the cover to access the storage area.

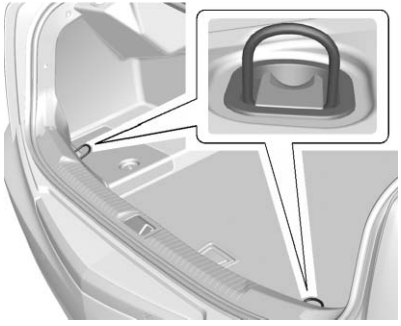
Center Console Storage



Press the button and lift to access the storage area. There is a USB Port and an auxiliary jack inside. See “USB Port” and “Auxiliary Jack” in the infotainment manual.

Additional Storage Features

Cargo Tie-Downs



The cargo tie-downs can be used to secure small loads inside the trunk.

Instruments and Controls

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment 111
Steering Wheel Controls 111
Heated Steering Wheel 111
Horn 112
Windshield Wiper/Washer 112
Headlamp Washer 113
Compass 114
Clock 114
Power Outlets 114
Wireless Charging 115

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 117
Instrument Cluster 118
Speedometer 121
Odometer 121
Trip Odometer 121
Tachometer 121
Fuel Gauge 122
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 122
Seat Belt Reminders 123
Airbag Readiness Light 124
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 124
Charging System Light 125
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light) 125
Brake System Warning Light 127
Parking Brake Light 128
Service Electric Parking Brake Light 128
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 128
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light ... 129
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 129
Traction Off Light 129
StabiliTrak OFF Light 129
Traction Control System (TCS)/ StabiliTrak Light 130
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light 130
Tire Pressure Light 131
Engine Oil Pressure Light 131
Low Fuel Warning Light 132
Security Light 132
High-Beam On Light 132
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light 133
Lamps On Reminder 133
Cruise Control Light 133
Door Ajar Light 133

Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC) 134
Head-Up Display (HUD) 136

Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages 140
Engine Power Messages 140
Vehicle Speed Messages 141

Vehicle Personalization

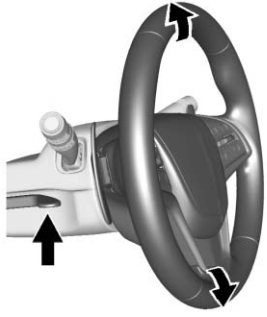
Vehicle Personalization 141

Universal Remote System

Universal Remote System 146
Universal Remote System Programming 146
Universal Remote System Operation 148

Controls

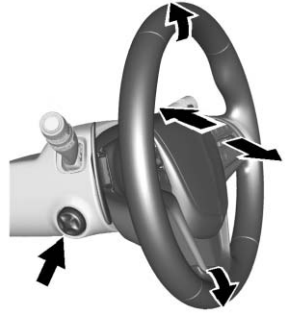
Steering Wheel Adjustment



To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Power Tilt and Telescoping Wheel



If equipped, the control is on the left side of the steering column.

- Push the control up or down to tilt the steering wheel up or down.
- Push the control forward or rearward to move the steering wheel toward the front or rear of the vehicle.

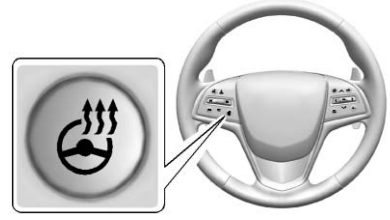
Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

To set the power tilt wheel memory position, see *Memory Seats* ⇨ *61*.

Steering Wheel Controls

The infotainment system can be operated by using the steering wheel controls. See "Steering Wheel Controls" in the infotainment manual.

Heated Steering Wheel



: If equipped, press to turn the heated steering wheel on or off. An indicator light next to the button displays when the feature is turned on.

The steering wheel takes about three minutes to be fully heated.

If equipped with a remote start heated steering wheel, the heated steering wheel will turn on automatically in

remote start along with the heated seats when it is cold outside. The heated steering wheel indicator light may not come on. See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *64*.

Horn

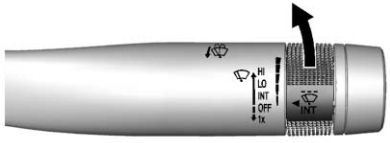
Press on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

Windshield Wiper/Washer

With the ignition on or in ACC/ACCESSORY, move the windshield wiper lever to select the wiper speed.

HI : Use for fast wipes.

LO : Use for slow wipes.



INT : Use this setting for intermittent wipes or for Rainsense wipes, when Rainsense is enabled. For intermittent wipes, move the lever up to INT, then turn the INT band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes. If Rainsense is enabled, see “Rainsense” later in this section.

If the windshield wipers are in use while driving, the exterior lamps come on automatically if the exterior lamp control is in AUTO. The transition time for the lamps coming on varies based on wiper speed. See “Lights On with Wipers” under *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *152*.

OFF : Use to turn the wipers off.

1X : For a single wipe, briefly move the wiper lever down. For several wipes, hold the wiper lever down.

Clear snow and ice from the wiper blades and windshield before using them. If frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged blades should be replaced. See *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ *276*.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor.

Wiper Parking

If the ignition is turned off while the wipers are on LO, HI, or INT with Rainsense disabled, they will immediately stop.

If the windshield wiper lever is then moved to OFF before the driver door is opened or within 10 minutes, the wipers will restart and move to the base of the windshield.

If the ignition is turned off while the wipers are performing wipes due to windshield washing or Rainsense, the wipers continue to run until they reach the base of the windshield.

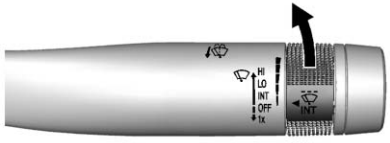
Rainsense

If equipped with Rainsense, a sensor near the top center of the windshield detects the amount of water on the

windshield and controls the frequency of the windshield wiper. To turn this feature on or off, see “Rain Sense Wipers” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Keep this area of the windshield clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

INT : When enabled, move the windshield wiper lever to INT. Turn the INT band on the wiper lever to adjust the sensitivity.



- Turn the band up for more sensitivity to moisture.
- Turn the band down for less sensitivity to moisture.
- Move the windshield wiper lever out of the INT position to deactivate Rainsense.

Wiper Arm Assembly Protection

When using an automatic car wash, move the windshield wiper lever to OFF. This disables the automatic Rainsense windshield wipers.

With Rainsense, if the transmission is in N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is very slow, the wipers will automatically stop at the base of the windshield.

The wiper operations return to normal when the transmission is no longer in N (Neutral) or the vehicle speed has increased.

: Pull the windshield wiper lever toward you to spray windshield washer fluid and activate the wipers. The wipers will continue until the lever is released or the maximum wash time is reached. When the windshield wiper lever is released, additional wipes may occur depending on how long the windshield washer had been activated. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *271* for information on filling the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

⚠ Warning

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

Headlamp Washer

If equipped with headlamp washers, they are located to the side of the headlamps.

The headlamps must be on in order to use the headlamp washers. If the headlamps are not on, only the windshield will be washed.

Pull the wiper lever toward you and hold briefly to activate. The headlamp washers will spray once, pause, and spray again. The headlamp washers will spray again after five windshield wash cycles.

To refill the windshield washer fluid, see *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *271*.

Compass

The vehicle may have a compass display on the Driver Information Center (DIC). The compass receives its heading and other information from the Global Positioning System (GPS) antenna, StabiliTrak, and vehicle speed information.

The compass system is designed to operate for a certain number of miles or degrees of turn before needing a signal from the GPS satellites. When the compass display shows CAL, drive the vehicle for a short distance in an open area where it can receive a GPS signal. The compass system will automatically determine when a GPS signal is restored and provide a heading again.

Clock

The time and date for the clock can be set using the infotainment system. See “Time/Date” in “System“under “Settings” in the infotainment manual.

Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

The vehicle has two accessory power outlets:

- Inside the instrument panel storage area below the climate control system.
- On the rear of the center floor console.

Lift the cover to access the accessory power outlet.

Certain electrical accessories may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could overload a vehicle circuit breaker or adapter fuse. If overloaded, the circuit breaker will reset after all devices are disconnected or if Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is turned off and then back on. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *195*. Wait one minute to allow the circuit breaker to reset before reconnecting devices or turning RAP back on. If the problem continues, the issue could be within your device. Try another known good device to make sure the circuit breaker is operating properly. If this does not resolve your problem, see your dealer.

It is possible to replace the factory power outlet with a cigar lighter receptacle, if desired. This requires the factory installed circuit breaker to be replaced with a standard minifuse by the dealer. A minifuse will not reset and will have to be replace if blown.

Caution

Failure to replace the circuit breaker with the minifuse could overheat the cigar lighter and damage the vehicle.

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *249*.

Caution

Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as cell phone charge cords.

Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 15 amps rating.

Power Outlet 110/120 Volt Alternating Current

If equipped, this power outlet is on the rear of the center floor console. It can be used to plug in electrical equipment that uses a maximum limit of 150 watts.

An indicator light on the outlet turns on to show it is in use. The light comes on when the vehicle is started. equipment requiring less than 150 watts is plugged into the outlet, and no system fault is detected.

The indicator light does not come on when the ignition is off or if the equipment is not fully seated into the outlet.

If equipment is connected using more than 150 watts or a system fault is detected, a protection circuit shuts off the power supply and the indicator light turns off. To reset the circuit, unplug the item and plug it back in or turn the Retained Accessory Power (RAP) off and then back on. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *195*. The power restarts when equipment using 150 watts or less is plugged into the outlet and a system fault is not detected.

The power outlet is not designed for the following and may not work properly, if this equipment is plugged in:

- Equipment with high initial peak wattage, such as compressor-driven refrigerators and electric power tools
- Other equipment requiring an extremely stable power supply such as: microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.
- Medical equipment

Wireless Charging

The system operates at 145 kHz and wirelessly charges one PMA or Qi compatible mobile device. The power output of the system is capable of charging at a rate up to 1 amp (5W), as requested by the compatible mobile device. See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *364*.

To check for phone or other device compatibility:

- In the U.S., see my.cadillac.com/learn.
- In Canada, see gmtotalconnect.ca.
- Or, see your dealer for details.

⚠ Warning

Wireless charging can affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

The ignition must be on in ACC/ACCESSORY, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active. The wireless charging feature may not correctly indicate charging when the vehicle is in RAP. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *195*.

The operating temperature is –20 °C (–4 °F) to 60 °C (140 °F) for the charging system and 0 °C (32 °F) to 35 °C (95 °F) for the phone.

⚠ Warning

Remove all objects from the charging pad before charging your mobile device. Objects, such as coins, keys, rings, paper clips, or cards, between the phone and charging pad will become very hot. On the rare occasion that the charging system does not detect an object, and the object gets wedged between the phone and charger, remove the phone and allow the object to cool before removing it from the charging pad, to prevent burns.

To charge a mobile device:

1. Open the climate control system panel.

2. Remove all objects from the charging pad. The system may not charge if there are any objects between the phone and charging pad.
3. Place the mobile device face up on the symbol on the charging pad.
4. The will show above the on the infotainment display. This indicates that the mobile device is properly positioned and charging. If a phone is placed on the charging pad and does not display, remove the phone from the pad, turn it 180 degrees, and wait three seconds before placing/aligning the phone on the pad again.

Keep the storage door closed while driving.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working. When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Instrument Cluster

English with Auto Stop Shown, Metric Similar

English V-Series Shown, Metric Similar

Cluster Application Displays

The cluster has three interactive display zones.

Use the five-way control on the right steering wheel control to move between the different display zones and scroll through the different displays.

The left and right zones display Driver Information Center (DIC) information. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *134*.

The center zone displays application information for the digital speedometer, navigation, audio, phone, efficiency gauge, best fuel economy, or options.

Digital Speedometer

While the digital speedometer is displayed, press SEL to select speed limit information.

Navigation

If there is no active route, a compass will be displayed. If there is an active route, press SEL to end route guidance or turn the voice prompts on or off.

Audio

While the Audio application page is displayed, press SEL to enter the Audio menu. In the Audio menu search for music, select from favorites, or change the audio source.

Phone

While the Phone application page is displayed, press SEL to enter the Phone menu. In the Phone menu, if there is no active phone call, view recent calls, select from favorites, or scroll through contacts. If there is an active call, mute the phone or switch to handset operation.

Best Fuel Economy

This page displays average fuel economy, the best fuel economy over the selected distance, and a bar graph showing instantaneous fuel economy.

Options

Press SEL while the Options application page is displayed to enter the Options menu.

Units : Press SEL while Units is highlighted to enter the Units menu. Choose English or metric units by pressing SEL while the desired item is highlighted. A checkmark will be displayed next to the selected item.

Info Pages : Press SEL while Info Pages is highlighted to select the items to be displayed in the DIC information displays. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *134*.

Head-up Display (HUD) Rotation : This feature allows for adjusting the angle of the HUD image. Press SEL on the steering wheel controls while Head-up Display Rotation is highlighted to enter Adjust Mode. Press ∧ or ∨ to adjust the angle of the HUD display. Press < or > to highlight OK, then press SEL to save the setting. Cancel can also be selected to cancel the setting. The vehicle must be in P (Park).

Fav Button Options : Press SEL while Fav Button Options is highlighted to select between FAV Primary and SEEK Primary. This selection allows for configuration of the △̅ and ▽̅

steering wheel controls. When FAV Primary is selected, pressing △ and ▽ will go to the next or previous favorite and pressing and holding △ and ▽ will seek. When SEEK Primary is selected, pressing △ and ▽ will seek and pressing and holding △ and ▽ will go to the next or previous favorite.

Open Source Software : Press SEL while Open Source Software is highlighted to display open source software information.

Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in either kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph).

Odometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven, in either kilometers or miles.

Trip Odometer

The trip odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last reset.

The trip odometer is accessed and reset through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *134*.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

For vehicles with the Stop/Start system, when the ignition is on, the tachometer indicates the vehicle status. When pointing to AUTO STOP, the engine is off but the vehicle is on and can move. The engine could auto start at any time. When the indicator points to OFF, the vehicle is off.

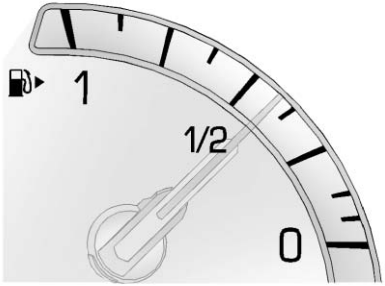
When the engine is on, the tachometer will indicate the engine's revolutions per minute (rpm). The tachometer may vary by several hundred rpm's, during Auto Stop mode, when the engine is shutting off and restarting.

A slight bump may be felt when the transmission is determining the most fuel efficient operating range.

Caution

If the engine is operated with the rpm's in the warning area at the high end of the tachometer, the vehicle could be damaged, and the damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not operate the engine with the rpm's in the warning area.

Fuel Gauge



When the ignition is on, the fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is left in the tank.

There is an arrow near the fuel gauge pointing to the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

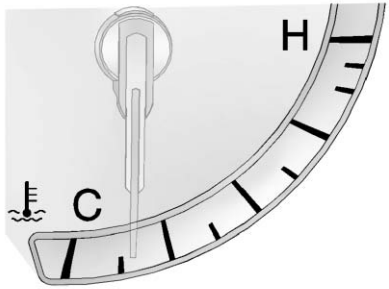
When the indicator nears empty, the low fuel light comes on. There still is a little fuel left, but the vehicle should be refueled soon.

Here are four things that some owners ask about. None of these show a problem with the fuel gauge:

- At the service station, the fuel pump shuts off before the gauge reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the gauge indicated. For example, the gauge may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gauge moves a little while turning a corner or speeding up.
- The gauge takes a few seconds to stabilize after the ignition is turned on, and goes back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Metric



English

This gauge measures the temperature of the vehicle's engine.

While driving under normal operating conditions, if the needle moves into the shaded area, the engine is too hot. Pull off the road, stop the vehicle, and turn off the engine as soon as possible.

Seat Belt Reminders

Driver Seat Belt Reminder Light

There is a driver seat belt reminder light on the instrument cluster.

When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind the driver to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle may continue several times if the driver remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver seat belt is buckled, neither the light nor the chime comes on.

Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light

There is a passenger seat belt reminder light near the passenger airbag status indicator. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *82*.

When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind passengers to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle continues several times if the passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the passenger seat belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger seat belt reminder light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the reminder light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the seat belt.

Airbag Readiness Light

This light shows if there is an electrical problem with the airbag system. The system check includes the airbag sensor(s), the passenger sensing system, the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System* ⇨ *76*.

The airbag readiness light comes on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

If there is a problem with the airbag system, a Driver Information Center (DIC) message may also come on.

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *82* for important safety information. The passenger airbag status indicator is in the overhead console.

United States

Canada and Mexico

When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, or the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag.

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag are allowed to inflate.

If the word OFF or the off symbol is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag.

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer for service.

⚠ Warning

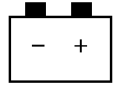
If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Airbag Readiness Light ➪ *124* for more information, including important safety information.

Charging System Light



The charging system light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show the light is working. It should go out when the engine is started.

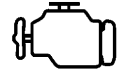
If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the electrical charging system. Have it checked by your dealer. Driving while this light is on could drain the battery.

When this light comes on, or is flashing, the Driver Information Center (DIC) also displays a message.

If a short distance must be driven with the light on, be sure to turn off all accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)

This light is part of the vehicle's emission control on-board diagnostic system. If this light is on while the engine is running, a malfunction has been detected and the vehicle may require service. The light should come on to show that it is working when the ignition is in Service Mode. See *Ignition Positions* ➪ *190*.



Malfunctions are often indicated by the system before any problem is noticeable. Being aware of the light and seeking service promptly when it comes on may prevent damage.

Caution

If the vehicle is driven continually with this light on, the emission control system may not work as well, the fuel economy may be lower, and the vehicle may not run smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Caution

Modifications to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system, or the use of replacement tires that do not meet the original tire specifications, can cause this light to come on. This could lead to costly repairs not

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

covered by the vehicle warranty. This could also affect the vehicle's ability to pass an Emissions Inspection/Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *252*.

If the light is flashing : A malfunction has been detected that could damage the emission control system and increase vehicle emissions. Diagnosis and service may be required.

To help prevent damage, reduce vehicle speed and avoid hard accelerations and uphill grades. If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as possible.

If the light continues to flash, find a safe place to park. Turn the vehicle off and wait at least 10 seconds before restarting the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous guidelines and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

If the light is on steady : A malfunction has been detected. Diagnosis and service may be required.

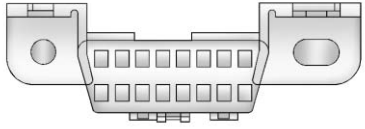
Check the following:

- If fuel has been added to the vehicle using the capless fuel funnel adapter, make sure that it has been removed. See "Filling the Tank with a Portable Gas Can" under *Filling the Tank* ⇨ *242*. The diagnostic system can detect if the adapter has been left installed in the vehicle, allowing fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the adapter removed may turn off the light.
- Poor fuel quality can cause inefficient engine operation and poor driveability, which may go away once the engine is warmed up. If this occurs, change the fuel brand. It may require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off. See *Fuel* ⇨ *240*.

If the light remains on, see your dealer.

Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

If the vehicle requires an Emissions Inspection/Maintenance test, the test equipment will likely connect to the vehicle's Data Link Connector (DLC).



The DLC is under the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel. Connecting devices that are not used to perform an Emissions Inspection/ Maintenance test or to service the vehicle may affect vehicle operation. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *249*. See your dealer if assistance is needed.

The vehicle may not pass inspection if:

- The light is on when the engine is running.
- The light does not come on when the ignition is in Service Mode.
- Critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed. If this happens, the vehicle would not be ready for inspection and might require several days of routine driving before the system is ready for inspection. This can happen if the 12-volt battery has recently been replaced or run down, or if the vehicle has been recently serviced.

See your dealer if the vehicle will not pass or cannot be made ready for the test.

Brake System Warning Light

The vehicle brake system consists of two hydraulic circuits. If one circuit is not working, the remaining circuit can still work to stop the vehicle. For normal braking performance, both circuits need to be working.

If the warning light comes on, there is a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected right away.

BRAKE

Metric English

This light should come on briefly when the engine is started. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If the light comes on and stays on, there is a brake problem.

⚠ Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

Parking Brake Light

PARK

Metric English

This light comes on when the parking brake is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system. A message may also display in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your dealer.

Service Electric Parking Brake Light

This light should come on briefly when starting the vehicle. If it does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If this light stays on, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system or another system on the vehicle that is causing the parking brake system to work at a reduced level. The vehicle can still be driven, but should be taken to a dealer as soon as possible. See the information for the Electric Parking Brake under *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *206* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *208*.
A message may also display in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If the light does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as it is safely possible and turn off the vehicle. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the ABS light stays on, or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. A chime may also sound when the light comes on steady.

If the ABS light is the only light on, the vehicle has regular brakes, but the antilock brakes are not functioning.

If both the ABS and the brake system warning light are on, the vehicle's antilock brakes are not functioning and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See your dealer for service.

See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *127*.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light

If available, this light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced.

This light is green if LKA is available to assist.

LKA may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction. The LKA light will turn amber.

This light is amber and flashes as a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert, to indicate that the lane marking has been crossed.

See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *239*.

Vehicle Ahead Indicator

If equipped, this indicator will display green when a vehicle is detected ahead and amber when you are following a vehicle ahead much too closely.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *232*.

Traction Off Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then turns off.

The traction off light comes on when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off by pressing and releasing the TCS/StabiliTrak button.

This light and the StabiliTrak OFF light come on when StabiliTrak is turned off.

If the TCS is off, wheel spin is not limited. Adjust driving accordingly.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *209*.

StabiliTrak OFF Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light comes on when the StabiliTrak system is turned off. If StabiliTrak is off, the Traction Control System (TCS) is also off.

This light may also come on when a Performance Traction Management (PTM) mode is selected. See "Performance Traction Management (V-Series Only)" under *Competitive Driving Mode (FE3 Only)* ⇨ *214*.

If the StabiliTrak and TCS are off, the system does not assist in controlling the vehicle. Turn on the TCS and the StabiliTrak systems and the warning light turns off.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *209*.

Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak Light

This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If the light does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light is on and not flashing, the TCS and potentially the StabiliTrak system have been disabled. A Driver Information Center (DIC) message may display. Check the DIC messages to determine which feature(s) is no longer functioning and whether the vehicle requires service.

If the light is on and flashing, the TCS and/or the StabiliTrak system is actively working.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *209*.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light goes off.

Caution

The engine coolant temperature warning light indicates that the vehicle has overheated. Driving with this light on can damage the engine and it may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *269*.

The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on when the engine has overheated.

If this happens, pull over and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *269*.

Tire Pressure Light

For vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started. It provides information about tire pressures and the TPMS.

When the Light Is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tires are significantly underinflated.

A Driver Information Center (DIC) tire pressure message may also display. Stop as soon as possible, and inflate the tires to the pressure value shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *298*.

When the Light Flashes First and Then Is On Steady

If the light flashes for about a minute and then stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. If the problem is not corrected, the light will come on at every ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *300*.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

Caution

Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Check the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the oil pressure is still low, have the

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

vehicle serviced. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.

This light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and might have some other system problem. See your dealer.

Low Fuel Warning Light

This light is near the fuel gauge and comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on as a check to show it is working.

It also comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. The light turns off when fuel is added. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced.

Security Light

The security light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. See *Immobilizer Operation* ⇨ *47*.

High-Beam On Light

This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ *151*.

IntelliBeam Light

This light comes on when the IntelliBeam system, if equipped, is enabled.

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *149*.

Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light

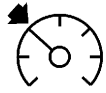
This light should come on briefly as the vehicle is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light comes on solid when there is a problem with the AFL system. It flashes when the system is switching between lighting modes. See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* ⇨ *153*.

Lamps On Reminder

This light comes on when the exterior lamps are in use. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *149*.

Cruise Control Light

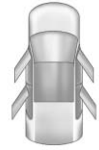


The cruise control light is white when the cruise control is on and ready, and turns green when the cruise control is set and active. See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *218*.

Adaptive Cruise Control Light

This light comes on when Adaptive Cruise Control (if equipped) is active. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *220*.

Door Ajar Light



For vehicles equipped with this light, it comes on when a door is open or not securely latched. Before driving, check that all doors are properly closed.

Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC)

The DIC displays are shown in the left and right interactive display zones on the instrument cluster. The displays show the status of many vehicle systems. The controls for the DIC are on the right steering wheel control.

∧ or ∨ : Press to move up or down in a list.

< or > : Press to move between the interactive display zones in the cluster. Press < to go back to the previous menu.

SEL : Press to open a menu or select a menu item. Press and hold to reset values on certain screens.

DIC Information Display Options

The information displays on the DIC can be turned on or off through the Options menu.

1. Press SEL while viewing the Options page in the center display zone on the cluster.
2. Scroll to Info Pages and press SEL.
3. Press ∧ or ∨ to move through the list of possible information displays.
4. Press SEL while an item is highlighted to select or deselect that item. When an item is selected, a checkmark will appear next to it.

DIC Information Displays

The following is the list of all possible DIC information displays. Some of the information displays may not be available for your particular vehicle.

Speed : Shows the vehicle speed in either kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph).

Trip 1 and Trip 2 : Shows the current distance traveled, in either kilometers (km) or miles (mi), since the trip odometer was last reset. The trip odometer can be reset by pressing and holding SEL while this display is active.

Fuel Range : Shows the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refueling. LOW will be displayed when the vehicle is low on fuel. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

Average Fuel Economy : Shows the approximate average liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) or miles per gallon (mpg). This number is

calculated based on the number of L/100 km (mpg) recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. This number reflects only the approximate average fuel economy that the vehicle has right now, and will change as driving conditions change. The Average Fuel Economy can be reset by pressing and holding SEL while this display is active.

Instantaneous Fuel Economy : Shows the current fuel economy in either liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) or miles per gallon (mpg). This number reflects only the approximate fuel economy that the vehicle has right now and changes frequently as driving conditions change.

Average Speed : Shows the average speed of the vehicle in kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset of this value. The average speed can be reset by pressing and holding SEL while this display is active.

Timer : This display can be used as a timer. To start the timer, press SEL while this display is active. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset. To stop the timer, press SEL briefly while this display is active and the timer is running. To reset the timer to zero, press and hold SEL while this display is active.

Compass : Shows the direction the vehicle is driving.

Turn Arrow : Shows the next maneuver when using route guidance.

Travel Time : Shows the estimated time duration remaining for the current route.

Estimated Time to Arrival : Shows the approximate time of arrival to your destination when using route guidance.

Speed Limit : Shows the current speed limit on vehicles with the navigation system. The information for this page comes from a roadway database.

Speed Warning : Allows the driver to set a speed that they do not want to exceed. To set the Speed Warning, press SEL when Speed Warning is displayed. Press ∧ or ∨ to adjust the value. This feature can be turned off by pressing and holding SEL while viewing this page. If the selected speed limit is exceeded, a pop-up warning is displayed and a chime may sound.

Cruise Set Speed : Shows the speed the cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC, if equipped) is set to.

Follow Distance/Gap Setting : When Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is not engaged, the current follow time to the vehicle ahead is displayed as a time value on this page. When ACC has been engaged, the display switches to the gap setting page. This page shows the current gap setting along with the vehicle ahead telltale.

Battery Voltage : Shows the current battery voltage.

Oil Life : Shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life.
If REMAINING OIL LIFE 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains.

When the remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. The oil should be changed as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *336*.

The Oil Life display must be reset after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Do not to reset the Oil Life display accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, press and hold SEL for several seconds while the Oil Life display is active. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *261*.

Tire Pressure : Shows the approximate pressures of all four tires. Tire pressure is displayed in either kilopascal (kPa) or in pounds per square inch (psi). If the pressure is low, the value for that tire is shown in amber.
See *Tire Pressure Monitor System* ⇨ *299* and *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *300*.

Tire Temperature : Displays a description of the tire air temperature based on the readings form the TPMS sensors. The temperature range displayed will change based on ambient conditions and driving style.

Engine Boost (LTG and LF4 Engines) : Displays engine manifold pressure relative to ambient air pressure. It will display boost pressure generated by the turbocharging system.

Vehicle Odometer : Shows the odometer.

Blank Page : The Blank Page display allows for no information to be displayed in the DIC display zone(s).

Head-Up Display (HUD)

⚠ Warning

If the HUD image is too bright or too high in your field of view, it may take you more time to see things you need to see when it is dark outside. Be sure to keep the HUD image dim and placed low in your field of view.

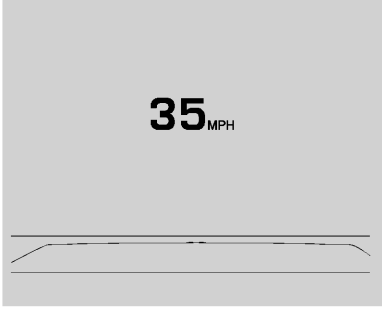
If equipped with HUD, some information concerning the operation of the vehicle is projected onto the windshield. The information is projected through the HUD lens on the driver side of the instrument panel and focused out toward the front of the vehicle.

Caution

If you try to use the HUD image as a parking aid, you may misjudge the distance and damage your vehicle. Do not use the HUD image as a parking aid.

The HUD information can be displayed in various languages. The speedometer reading and other numerical values can be displayed in either English or metric units.

The language selection is changed through the radio and the units of measurement is changed through the instrument cluster. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141* and “Settings” under *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *118*.



HUD Display on the Vehicle Windshield

The HUD may display some of the following vehicle information and vehicle messages or alerts:

- Speed
- Speed Limit
- Vehicle Ahead
- Tachometer
- Audio
- Phone
- Navigation
- Collision Alert
- Cruise Control Set Speed
- Adaptive Cruise Control
- Lane Departure/Lane Keep Assist
- Low Fuel
- Transmission Gear
- Shift Lights (ATS-V only)

Some vehicle messages or alerts displayed in the HUD may be cleared by using the steering wheel controls. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *140*.

The HUD control is to the left of the steering wheel.

To adjust the HUD image:

1. Adjust the driver seat to a comfortable position.
2. Start the engine.
3. Use the following settings to adjust the HUD.

HUD **:** Press down or lift up to center the HUD image. The HUD image can only be adjusted up and down, not side to side.

INFO **:** Press to select the display view. Each press will change the display view.

±☼ : Lift up and hold to brighten the display. Press down and hold to dim the display. Hold down to turn the display off.

The HUD image will automatically dim and brighten to compensate for outside lighting. The HUD brightness control can also be adjusted as needed.

The HUD image can temporarily light up depending on the angle and position of sunlight on the HUD display. This is normal.

Polarized sunglasses could make the HUD image harder to see.

Head-Up Display (HUD) Rotation Option

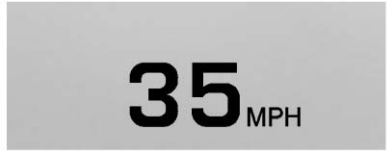
This feature allows for adjusting the angle of the HUD image.

Press SEL on the steering wheel controls while Head-up Display Rotation is highlighted to enter Main View. From Main View, press SEL to enter the Adjust Menu. Press ∧ or ∨ to adjust the angle of the HUD display. Press < or > to highlight OK, then press SEL to save the setting. CANCEL can also be selected to cancel the setting. The vehicle must be in P (Park). See *Instrument Cluster* ➪ *118*.

HUD Views

There are four views in the HUD. Some vehicle information and vehicle messages or alerts may be displayed in any view.

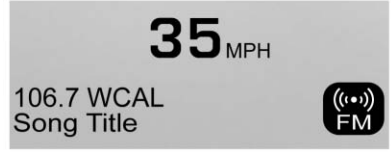
Metric



English

Speed View : This display gives the speedometer reading (in English or metric units), Adaptive Cruise Control, Set Speed, Speed Limit, Forward Collision Alert, Lane Departure Warning/ Lane Keep Assist, and Vehicle Ahead indicator. Some information only appears on vehicles that have these features, and when they are active.

Metric



English

Audio/Phone View : This display includes the information in speed view along with audio/phone information. The current radio station, media type, and incoming calls will be displayed.

All HUD views may briefly display audio information when the driver uses the steering wheel controls to adjust the audio settings appearing in the instrument cluster.

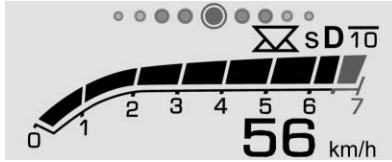
Incoming phone calls appearing in the instrument cluster may also display in any HUD view.

Metric

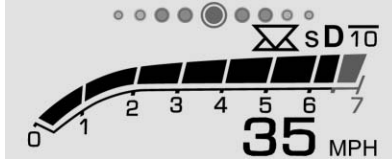
English

Navigation View : This display includes the information in speed view along with Turn-by-Turn Navigation information. When navigation routing is not active, “Compass Information Is Displayed”.

Navigation Turn-by-Turn Alerts shown in the instrument cluster may also be displayed in any HUD view.



Metric



English

Performance View : This display gives the speedometer reading, rpm reading, transmission positions, Shift Timing Light Position (ATS-V only), and gear shift indicator (if equipped). The radio, CD, navigation, and phone information do not appear in Performance view.

The shift timing lights at the top of the display will appear with increases in engine rpm. The rows of lights get closer together as the shift point gets closer. Shift the transmission before the lights come together in the display. Shift immediately if the lights are flashing.
See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *201* or *Manual Transmission* ⇨ *203*.

Care of the HUD

Clean the inside of the windshield to remove any dirt or film that could reduce the sharpness or clarity of the HUD image.

Clean the HUD lens with a soft cloth sprayed with glass cleaner. Wipe the lens gently, then dry it.

HUD Troubleshooting

Check that:

- Nothing is covering the HUD lens.
- HUD brightness setting is not too dim or too bright.
- HUD is adjusted to the proper height.

- Polarized sunglasses are not worn.
- Windshield and HUD lens are clean.

If the HUD image is not correct, contact your dealer.

The windshield is part of the HUD system. If windshield replacement is required, see *Windshield Replacement* ⇨ *277*.

Vehicle Messages

Messages displayed on the DIC indicate the status of the vehicle or some action that may be needed to correct a condition. Multiple messages may appear one after another.

The messages that do not require immediate action can be acknowledged and cleared by pressing ✓. The messages that require immediate action cannot be cleared until that action is performed.

All messages should be taken seriously; clearing the message does not correct the problem.

If a SERVICE message appears, see your dealer.

Follow the instructions given in the messages. The system displays messages regarding the following topics:

- Service Messages
- Fluid Levels
- Vehicle Security
- Brakes
- Ride Control Systems
- Driver Assistance Systems
- Cruise Control
- Lighting and Bulb Replacement
- Wiper/Washer Systems
- Doors and Windows
- Seat Belts
- Airbag Systems
- Engine and Transmission
- Tire Pressure
- Battery

Engine Power Messages

ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED

This message displays when the vehicle's propulsion power is reduced. Reduced propulsion power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate.
If this message is on, but there is no observed reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven while this message is

on, but maximum acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, or displays repeatedly, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Vehicle Speed Messages

SPEED LIMITED TO XXX KM/H (MPH)

This message shows that the vehicle speed has been limited to the speed displayed. The limited speed is a protection for various propulsion and vehicle systems, such as lubrication, thermal, suspension, or tires.

Vehicle Personalization

The following are all possible vehicle personalization features. Depending on the vehicle, some may not be available.

For System, Apps, and Personal features and functions, see “Settings” in the infotainment manual.

To access the vehicle personalization menu:

1. Touch the Settings icon on the Home Page of the infotainment display.
2. Touch Vehicle to display a list of available options.
3. Touch to select the desired feature setting.
4. Touch ◯ or | to turn a feature off or on.
5. Touch X to go to the top level of the Settings menu.

The menu may contain the following:

Rear Seat Reminder

This allows for a chime and a message when the rear door has been opened before or during operation of the vehicle.

Touch Off or On.

Driving Mode

These settings will overwrite the main Vehicle Mode selections made with the MODE switch on the console.

Touch and the following may display:

- Engine Sound Management
- Steering
- Suspension

Engine Sound Management

This setting adjusts the sound of the engine exhaust from a quiet to a loud exhaust volume.

Touch Auto (Follows the MODE switch), Tour, Sport, or Track.

Steering

This setting adjusts how the steering feels from a lighter to a reduced assist for more steering feel.

Touch Auto (Follows the MODE switch), Tour, Sport, or Track.

Suspension

This setting adjusts the suspension from a comfortable to a more responsive tune.

Touch Auto (Follows the MODE switch), Tour, Sport, or Track.

Climate and Air Quality

Touch and the following may display:

- Auto Fan Speed
- Air Quality Sensor
- Auto Heated Seats
- Auto Defog
- Auto Rear Defog

Auto Fan Speed

This setting specifies the amount of airflow when the climate control fan setting is Auto Fan.

Touch Low, Medium, or High.

Air Quality Sensor

This setting switches the system into Recirculation Mode based on the quality of the outside air.

Touch Off, Low Sensitivity, or High Sensitivity.

Auto Heated Seats

This setting automatically turns on and regulates the heated seats when the cabin temperature is cool. The auto heated seats can be turned off by using the heated seat buttons on the center stack. See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *64*.

If equipped with Auto Heated Steering Wheel, this feature will turn on when the Auto Heated Seats turn on.

Touch Off or On.

Auto Defog

This setting automatically turns the front defogger on when the engine is started.

Touch Off or On.

Auto Rear Defog

This setting automatically turns the rear defogger on when the engine is started.

Touch Off or On.

Collision / Detection Systems

Touch the Collision/Detection Systems menu and the following may display:

- Alert Type
- Forward Collision System
- Adaptive Cruise Go Notifier
- Lane Change Alert
- Rear Camera Park Assist Symbols
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert

Alert Type

This setting specifies the type of vehicle feedback provided, either a beep or seat vibration, when you are in danger of colliding with an object.

Touch Beeps or Safety Alert Seat.

Forward Collision System

This setting controls the vehicle response when detecting a vehicle ahead of you. The Off setting disables all FCA and FAB functions. With the Alert and Brake setting, both FCA and FAB are available. The Alert setting disables FAB. See *Forward Automatic Braking (FAB)* ⇨ *235*.

Touch Off, Alert, or Alert and Brake.

Adaptive Cruise Go Notifier

This setting determines if an alert will appear when Adaptive Cruise Control brings the vehicle to a complete stop and the vehicle ahead of you starts moving again. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *220*.

Touch Off or On.

Lane Change Alert

This setting specifies if an alert will display on the outside mirror to help you avoid crashing into a vehicle in your blind spot, or rapidly approaching your blind spot, during a lane change maneuver. See *Lane Change Alert (LCA)* ⇨ *237*.

Touch Off or On.

Rear Camera Park Assist Symbols

This setting enables the Rear Camera Park Assist Symbols. See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *229*.

Touch Off or On.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert

This setting specifies if an alert will display when the vehicle detects approaching rear cross traffic when in R (Reverse). See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *229*.

Touch Off or On.

Comfort and Convenience

Touch and the following may display:

- Auto Memory Recall
- Easy Exit Options
- Chime Volume
- Reverse Tilt Mirror
- Rain Sense Wipers

Auto Memory Recall

This feature automatically recalls the current driver's previously stored 1 or 2 button positions when the ignition is changed from off to on or ACC/ACCESSORY. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *61*.

Touch Off or On.

Easy Exit Options

This feature automatically recalls the previously stored exit button position when exiting the vehicle. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *61*.

Touch Off or On.

Chime Volume

This setting determines the chime volume level.

Touch the controls on the infotainment system to adjust the volume.

Reverse Tilt Mirror

When on, both the driver and passenger, driver, or passenger outside mirrors will tilt downward when the vehicle is shifted to R (Reverse) to improve visibility of the ground near

the rear wheels. They will return to their previous driving position when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse) or the engine is turned off.

Touch Off, On - Driver and Passenger, On - Driver, or On - Passenger.

Rain Sense Wipers

This setting automatically turns on the wipers when moisture is detected and the wiper switch is in intermittent mode.

Touch Disabled or Enabled.

Lighting

Touch and the following may display:

- Vehicle Locator Lights
- Exit Lighting
- Adaptive Forward Lighting

Vehicle Locator Lights

This setting flashes the vehicle's headlamps when 🔓 is pressed on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

Touch Off or On.

Exit Lighting

This setting specifies how long the headlamps stay on after the vehicle is turned off and exited.

Touch Off, 30 Seconds, 60 Seconds, or 120 Seconds.

Adaptive Forward Lighting

This setting automatically adjusts the headlamps to provide greater road illumination based on driving conditions.

Touch Off or Corner and Curve Lighting.

Power Door Locks

Touch and the following may display:

- Open Door Anti Lock Out
- Auto Door Unlock
- Delayed Door Lock

Open Door Anti Lock Out

This setting prevents the driver door from locking when the door is open. If this setting is on, the Delayed Door Lock menu will not be available.

Touch Off or On.

Auto Door Unlock

This setting allows selection of which doors will automatically unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

Touch Off, All Doors, or Driver Door.

Delayed Door Lock

This setting delays the locking of the vehicle's doors.

Touch Off or On.

Remote Lock, Unlock, Start

Touch and the following may display:

- Remote Unlock Light Feedback
- Remote Lock Feedback
- Remote Door Unlock
- Remote Start Auto Heat Seats
- Remote Window Operation
- Passive Door Unlock
- Passive Door Lock
- Remote Left in Vehicle Alert

Remote Unlock Light Feedback

This setting flashes the exterior lamps when the vehicle is unlocked with the RKE transmitter.

Touch Off or Flash Lights.

Remote Lock Feedback

This setting specifies how the vehicle responds when the vehicle is locked with the RKE transmitter.

Touch Off, Lights and Horn, Lights Only, or Horn Only.

Remote Door Unlock

This setting specifies whether all doors, or just the driver door, unlock when pressing 🔓 on the RKE transmitter.

Touch All Doors or Driver Door.

Remote Start Auto Heat Seats

This setting automatically turns on the heated seats when using the remote start function on cold days. See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *64* and *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *37*.

If equipped with Auto Heated Steering Wheel, this feature will turn on when the Remote Start Auto Heated Seats turn on.

Touch Off or On.

Remote Window Operation

If equipped, this feature enables remote operation of the windows with the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

Touch Off or On.

Passive Door Unlock

This setting specifies which doors unlock when using the button on the driver door handle to unlock the vehicle.

Touch All Doors or Driver Door Only.

Passive Door Lock

This setting specifies if the vehicle will automatically lock, or lock and provide an alert after all the doors are closed, and you walk away from the vehicle with the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

Touch Off, On with Horn Chirp, or On.

Remote Left in Vehicle Alert

This feature sounds an alert when the RKE transmitter is left in the vehicle. This menu also enables Remote No Longer in Vehicle Alert.

Touch Off or On.

Teen Driver

See “Teen Driver” under “Settings” in the infotainment manual.

Valet Mode

This will lock the infotainment system and steering wheel controls. It may also limit access to vehicle storage locations, if equipped.

To enable valet mode:

1. Enter a four-digit code on the keypad.
2. Touch Enter to go to the confirmation screen.
3. Re-enter the four-digit code.

Touch Lock or Unlock to lock or unlock the system. Touch Back to go back to the previous menu.

Universal Remote System

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *364*.

Universal Remote System Programming

If equipped, these buttons are in the overhead console.

This system can replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices. These instructions refer to a garage door opener, but can be used for other devices.

Do not use the Universal Remote system with any garage door opener that does not have the stop and reverse feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

Read these instructions completely before programming the Universal Remote system. It may help to have another person assist with the programming process.

Keep the original hand-held transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future programming. Erase the programming when vehicle ownership is terminated. See “Erasing Universal Remote System Buttons” later in this section.

To program a garage door opener, park outside directly in line with and facing the garage door opener receiver. Clear all people and objects near the garage door.

Make sure the hand-held transmitter has a new battery for quick and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

Programming the Universal Remote System

For questions or programming help, see www.homelink.com/gm or call 1-800-355-3515.

Programming involves time-sensitive actions, and may time out causing the procedure to be repeated.

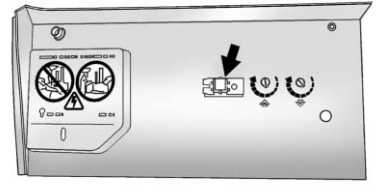
To program up to three devices:

1. Hold the end of the hand-held transmitter about 3 to 8 cm (1 to 3 in) away from the Universal Remote system buttons with the indicator light in view. The hand-held transmitter was supplied by the manufacturer of the garage door opener receiver.
2. At the same time, press and hold both the hand-held transmitter button and one of the three Universal Remote system buttons to be used to operate the garage door. Do not release either

button until the indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash. Then release both buttons.

Some garage door openers may require substitution of Step 2 with the procedure under “Radio Signals for Canada and Some Gate Operators” later in this section.

3. Press and hold the newly programmed Universal Remote system button for five seconds while watching the indicator light and garage door activation.
   - If the indicator light stays on continuously or the garage door moves when the button is pressed, then programming is complete. There is no need to complete Steps 4–6.
   - If the indicator light does not come on or the garage door does not move, a second button press may be required. For a second time, press and hold the newly programmed button for five seconds. If the light stays on or the garage door moves, programming is complete.
   - If the indicator light blinks rapidly for two seconds, then changes to a solid light and the garage door does not move, continue with programming Steps 4–6.



Learn or Smart Button

4. After completing Steps 1–3, locate the Learn or Smart button inside the garage on the garage door opener receiver. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.
5. Press and release the Learn or Smart button. Step 6 must be completed within 30 seconds of pressing this button.
6. Inside the vehicle, press and hold the newly programmed Universal Remote system button for two seconds and then release it. If the garage door does not move or the lamp on the garage door opener receiver does not flash, press and hold the same button a second time for two seconds, then release it. Again, if the door does not move or the garage door lamp does not flash, press and hold the same button a third time for two seconds, then release it.

The Universal Remote system should now activate the garage door.

Repeat the process for programming the two remaining buttons.

Radio Signals for Canada and Some Gate Operators

For questions or programming help, see www.homelink.com/gm or call 1-800-355-3515.

Canadian radio-frequency laws and some U.S. gate operators require transmitter signals to time out or quit after several seconds of transmission.

This may not be long enough for the Universal Remote system to pick up the signal during programming.

If the programming did not work, replace Step 2 under “Programming the Universal Remote System” with the following:

Press and hold the Universal Remote system button while pressing and releasing the hand-held transmitter button every two seconds until the signal has been successfully accepted by the Universal Remote system. The Universal Remote system indicator light will flash slowly at first and then rapidly. Proceed with Step 3 under “Programming the Universal Remote System” to complete.

Universal Remote System Operation

Using the Universal Remote System

Press and hold the appropriate Universal Remote system button for at least one-half second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

Erasing Universal Remote System Buttons

Erase all programmed buttons when vehicle ownership is terminated.

To erase:

1. Press and hold the two outside buttons until the indicator light begins to flash. This should take about 10 seconds.
2. Release both buttons.

Reprogramming a Single Universal Remote System Button

To reprogram any of the system buttons:

1. Press and hold any one of the buttons. Do not release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the button, proceed with Step 1 under “Programming the Universal Remote System.”

Lighting

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls 149
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder ... 151
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 151
Flash-to-Pass 151
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 151
Automatic Headlamp System ... 152
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) 153
Hazard Warning Flashers 153
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 153

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control 154
Courtesy Lamps 154
Dome Lamps 154
Reading Lamps 155

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting 156
Exit Lighting 156
Battery Power Protection 156
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 156

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls

The exterior lamp control is on the turn signal lever.

Turn the control to the following positions:

⏻ **:** Turns the exterior lamps off and deactivates the AUTO mode. Turn to ⏻ again to reactivate the AUTO mode.

In Canada, the headlamps will automatically reactivate when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) on automatic transmission vehicles, and when the parking brake is released on manual transmission vehicles.

AUTO : Automatically turns the exterior lamps on and off, depending on outside lighting.

: Turns on the parking lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

: Turns on the headlamps together with the parking lamps and instrument panel lights.

IntelliBeam System

If equipped, this system turns the vehicle's high-beam headlamps on and off according to surrounding traffic conditions.

The system turns the high-beam headlamps on when it is dark enough and there is no other traffic present.

An indicator light (Cluster with Auto Stop) or (V-Series Cluster) comes on in the instrument cluster when the IntelliBeam system is enabled.

Turning On and Enabling IntelliBeam

To enable the automatic high-beam system, with the turn signal lever in the neutral position, turn the exterior lamp control to AUTO. The blue high-beam on light appears on the instrument cluster when the high beams are on.

Driving with IntelliBeam

The system only activates the high beams when driving over 40 km/h (25 mph).

There is a sensor near the top center of the windshield, which automatically controls the system. Keep this area of the windshield clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

The high-beam headlamps remain on, under the automatic control, until one of the following situations occurs:

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps.
- The system detects a preceding vehicle's taillamps.
- The outside light is bright enough that high-beam headlamps are not required.
- The vehicle's speed drops below 20 km/h (12 mph).
- The turn signal lever is moved forward to the high-beam position or the Flash-to-Pass feature is used.
  See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ➪ *151* and *Flash-to-Pass* ➪ *151*.
- The Intellibeam system is disabled by the high/low-beam changer or the flash-to-pass feature. If this happens, the high/low-beam changer must be activated two times within two seconds to reactivate the Intellibeam system. The instrument cluster light will come on to indicate the Intellibeam system is reactivated.
  See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ➪ *151* and *Flash-to-Pass* ➪ *151*.

The high beams may not turn off automatically if the system cannot detect other vehicle's lamps because of any of the following:

- The other vehicle's lamp(s) are missing, damaged, obstructed from view, or otherwise undetected.

- The other vehicle's lamp(s) are covered with dirt, snow, and/or road spray.
- The other vehicle's lamp(s) cannot be detected due to dense exhaust, smoke, fog, snow, road spray, mist, or other airborne obstructions.
- Your vehicle's windshield is dirty, cracked, or obstructed by something that blocks the view of the light sensor.
- Your vehicle is loaded such that the front end points upward, causing the light sensor to aim high and not detect headlamps and taillamps.
- You are driving on winding or hilly roads.

You may need to manually disable or cancel the high-beam headlamps by turning the low-beam headlamps on, if any of the above conditions exist.

Exterior Lamps Off Reminder

A warning chime will sound if the exterior lamp control is left on in either the headlamp or parking lamp position and the driver door is opened with the ignition off.

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

Push the turn signal lever away from you and release, to turn the high beams on. To return to low beams, push the lever again or pull it toward you and release.

This indicator light turns on in the instrument cluster when the high-beam headlamps are on.

Flash-to-Pass

This feature allows the high-beam headlamps to be used to signal the driver in front of you that you want to pass.

Pull and hold the turn signal lever toward you to use this feature. When this is done the following will occur:

- If the headlamps are off or in low-beam mode, the high-beam headlamps will turn on. They will stay on as long as the lever is held there. Release the lever to turn them off.
- If the headlamps are in high-beam mode, they will go to low beam.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

DRL can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. Fully functional DRL are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

The DRL system turns on the low-beam headlamps at a reduced brightness. For vehicles with High

Intensity Discharge (HID) headlamps, there is a dedicated DRL. The DRL will come on when all of the following conditions are met:

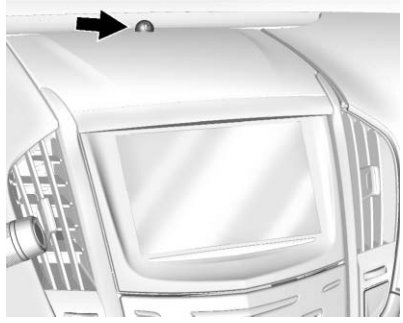
- The ignition is on.
- The exterior lamp control is in AUTO.
- The light sensor determines it is daytime.
- The parking brake is released or the vehicle is not in P (Park).

The taillamps, sidemarker lamps, instrument panel lights, and other lamps will not be on.

The DRL turn off when the headlamps are turned to ⏻ or the ignition is off. For vehicles first sold in Canada, the DRL can only be turned off when the transmission is in P (Park).

Automatic Headlamp System

When the exterior lamp control is set to AUTO and it is dark enough outside, the headlamps come on automatically.



There is a light sensor on top of the instrument panel. Do not cover the sensor, otherwise the headlamps will come on when they are not needed.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage or tunnel.

If the vehicle is started in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system comes on immediately. If it is light outside when the vehicle leaves the garage, there is a slight delay before the automatic headlamp system changes to the DRL. During that delay, the instrument cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure the instrument panel brightness control is in the full bright position. See *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *154*.

When it is bright enough outside, the headlamps will turn off or may change to Daytime Running Lamps (DRL).

The automatic headlamp system turns off when the exterior lamp control is turned to ⏻ or the ignition is off.

Lights On with Wipers

If the windshield wipers are activated in daylight with the engine on, and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO, the headlamps, parking lamps, and other exterior lamps come on. The transition time for the lamps coming on varies based on wiper speed. When the wipers are not operating, these lamps turn off. Move the exterior lamp control to ⏻ or ≡DOC to disable this feature.

Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)

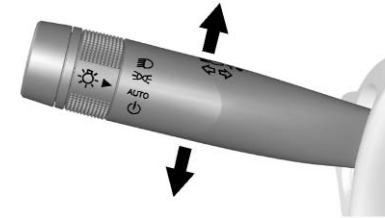
On vehicles with the AFL system, the headlamps pivot horizontally to provide greater road illumination while turning. To enable AFL, set the exterior lamp control on the turn signal lever to the AUTO position. Moving the control out of the AUTO position will deactivate the system. AFL will operate when the vehicle speed is greater than 3 km/h (2 mph). AFL will not operate when the transmission is in R (Reverse). AFL is not immediately operable after starting the vehicle; driving a short distance is required to calibrate the AFL. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *149*.

Hazard Warning Flashers

⚠ **:** Press to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Press again to turn the flashers off.

The hazard warning flashers turn on automatically if the airbags deploy.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

An arrow on the instrument cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is completed. If the lever is briefly pressed and released, the turn signal flashes three times.

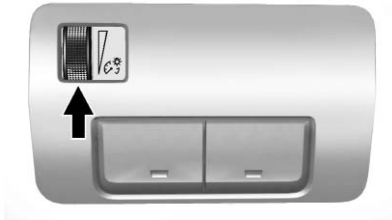
The turn and lane-change signal can be turned off manually by moving the lever back to its original position.

If after signaling a turn or lane change, the arrow flashes rapidly or does not come on, a signal bulb might be burned out.

Replace any burned out bulbs. If a bulb is not burned out, check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers* ⇨ *281*.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control



The brightness of the instrument panel lighting and steering wheel controls can be adjusted.

: Move the thumbwheel up or down to brighten or dim the lights.

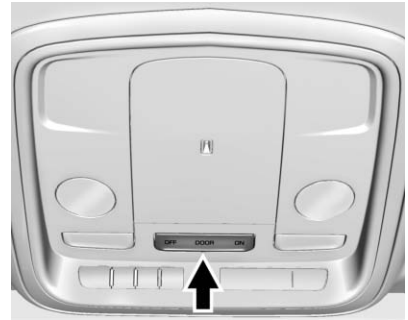
The brightness of the displays automatically adjusts based on outdoor lighting. The instrument panel illumination control will set the lowest level to which the displays will automatically be adjusted.

Courtesy Lamps

The courtesy lamps come on when any door is opened and the dome lamp is in the DOOR position.

Dome Lamps

The dome lamp is in the overhead console.



To change the dome lamp settings, press:

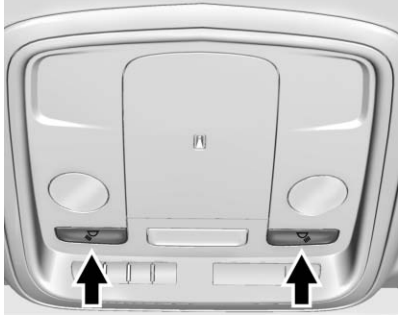
OFF : Turns the lamp off, even when a door is open.

DOOR : The lamp comes on when a door is opened.

ON : Turns the lamp on.

Reading Lamps

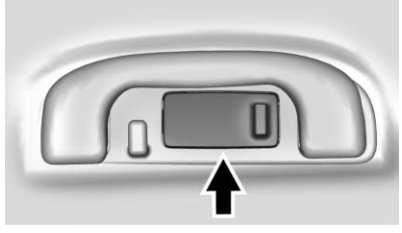
There are front and rear reading lamps. These lamps come on when any door is opened.



The front reading lamps are in the overhead console.

Press ⚲ or ⚲ to turn the lamps on or off.

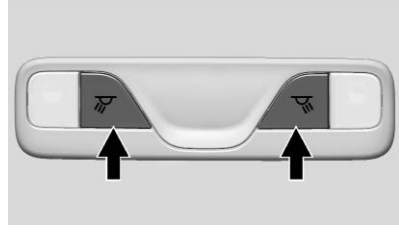
Sedan



The rear reading lamps are over the rear passenger doors.

Press the lamp lens to turn the rear passenger reading lamps on or off.

Coupe



The rear reading lamps are in the headliner.

Press ⚲ or ⚲ to turn the lamps on or off.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

Some exterior lamps and most of the interior lights turn on briefly at night, or in areas of limited lighting when 🔓 is pressed on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*. When the driver door is opened, all control lights, Driver Information Center (DIC) lights, and door pocket lights turn on. After about 30 seconds the exterior lamps turn off, then the remaining interior lights dim to off. Entry lighting can be disabled manually by turning the ignition on or to ACC/ACCESSORY, or by pressing 🔒 on the RKE transmitter.

This feature can be changed. See "Vehicle Locator Lights" under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Exit Lighting

Some exterior lamps and interior lights come on at night, or in areas with limited lighting, when the driver door is opened after the ignition is turned off. The dome lamp comes on after the ignition is turned off. The exterior lamps and dome lamp remain on for a set amount of time, then automatically turn off.

The exterior lamps turn off immediately by turning the exterior lamp control off.

This feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Battery Power Protection

The battery saver feature is designed to protect the vehicle's battery.

If some interior lamps are left on and the ignition is turned off, the battery rundown protection system automatically turns the lamp off after some time.

Exterior Lighting Battery Saver

The exterior lamps turn off about 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off, if the parking lamps or headlamps have been manually left on. This protects against draining the battery. To restart the 10-minute timer, turn the exterior lamp control to the ⏻ position and then back to the 🌡 or 🔆 position.

To keep the lamps on for more than 10 minutes, the ignition must be on or in ACC/ACCESSORY.

Infotainment System

Introduction
Infotainment 157

Performance Data Recorder (PDR)
Performance Data Recorder (PDR) 157

Introduction

Infotainment

See the infotainment manual for information on the radio, audio players, phone, navigation system, and voice or speech recognition. It also includes information on settings.

Performance Data Recorder (PDR)

If equipped, the PDR icon displays on the Home Page.

Important Information

Use of the PDR may be prohibited or legally restricted in certain countries and situations. Ensure compliance with applicable laws and regulations, including, but not limited to: privacy laws, laws related to camera surveillance and recordings, road traffic and security laws, and laws on the protection of publicity and personality rights.

- Do not use the PDR if it causes distraction.
- Do not rely on camera footage to steer the vehicle.
- Comply with any notice and consent requirements before capturing and/or recording the voices or images of other persons or before collecting other personal data.

- Notify other drivers of your vehicle of the above rules and require them to comply.
- General Motors does not accept any responsibility or liability in connection with use that is not permitted.
- Law enforcement authorities may have the right to seize video recordings and use them as evidence of criminal/driving offenses against you or third parties.

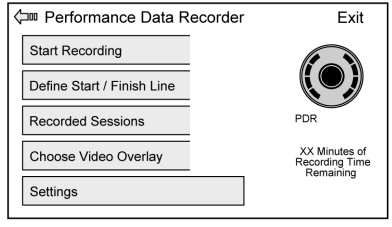
The PDR records video, audio, and vehicle data. This data is stored on a removable SD card in the glove box.

The recorded data is not stored anywhere else and is only accessible from the SD card.

To begin, insert a FAT32 formatted SD card, Class 10 required, 8, 16, or 32 GB recommended, into the glove box SD card reader.

Touch the PDR icon to access the PDR menu. The options displayed are:

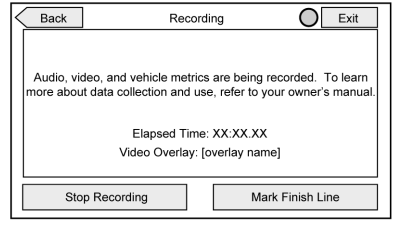
Start Recording



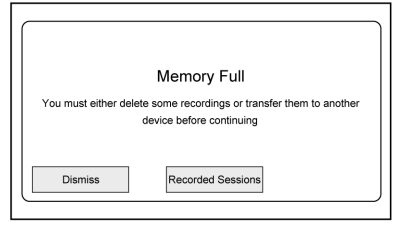
If the system is unable to begin recording, the Start Recording button is grayed out.

Touch Start Recording to begin recording. After recording begins, this button changes to Stop Recording. Touch to stop the recording session.

The recording must be stopped and the file closed before removing the SD card, or the recording cannot be reviewed.



The elapsed time will show when recording. To define a finish line, see “Define Finish Line” later in this section.



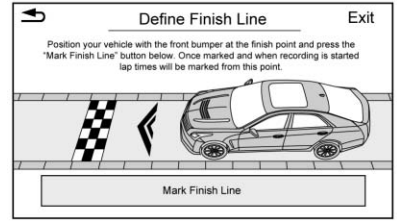
If there is no available space on the SD card, a message displays. Delete or transfer recordings on the SD card or use another SD card with free space.

To delete a recording, go to the Recorded Sessions menu and touch ✕ next to the item. See “Recorded Sessions” later in this section.

If no SD card is inserted, a message displays.

Define Finish Line

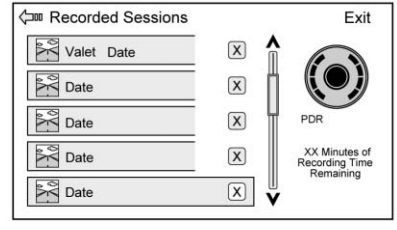
To track and record the vehicle’s lap times, the starting point of a lap must be set. Crossing this point activates the lap timer when recording.



To set the finish line, position the vehicle with the front bumper at the start/finish point. From the PDR menu, touch Define Finish Line and then touch Mark Finish Line. This can be done with the vehicle moving.

Recorded Sessions

To view recorded videos, touch Recorded Sessions.



A list of recordings displays.

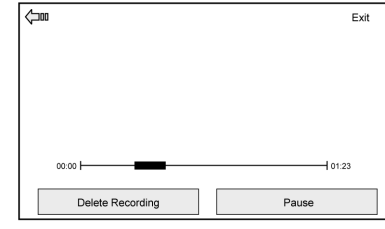
Select the recording to start playback.

Touch ✕ next to an item to delete that recording. Touch Yes to delete or No to cancel on the confirmation screen. Touch Dismiss to exit.

Video playback is not allowed while the vehicle is in motion.

Tap on the screen while the video is playing to display the video controls:

Video Scrubber : Changes the position and playback. The length of the bar corresponds to the time of the video. Advance or rewind the video by dragging along the bar.



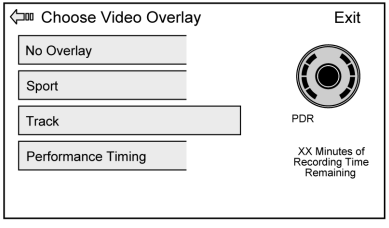
Delete Recording : Touch to delete the video. A confirmation screen displays. Touch Yes to delete or No to cancel.

Pause/Play : Touch to play or pause the video. The button will change when pressed.

⇦ **:** Touch to display the previous screen.

Exit : Touch to exit the current display.

Choose Video Overlay



Touch the Choose Video Overlay screen button to display the menu screen.

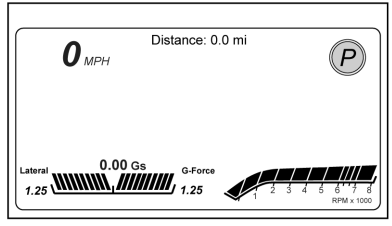
Select one:

- No Overlay
- Sport
- Track
- Performance Timing

No Overlay:

No vehicle data displays on top of the recorded video. Vehicle data is still available with the video when accessed in the toolbox software.

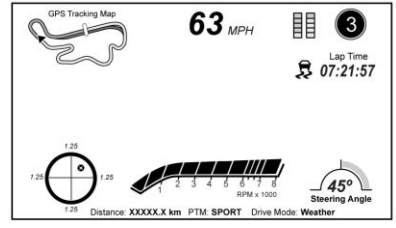
Sport:



Displays these vehicle metrics:

- Vehicle Speed: Up to three digits are displayed in km/h or MPH depending on vehicle settings.
- Engine Rotations Per Minute (RPMs): The curved line shows current RPMs. As the RPMs increase, the backfill follows.
- Transmission State (Current Gear): Automatic and manual transmissions display 1, 2, etc.
- Lateral G-Force Graphic: Left and Right G-Forces are displayed. The graphic fills to the left or the right depending on the measure value. The measured G-Force displays as a number at the top of the graphic.
- Event Odometer: This displays the mileage driven since the recording began.

Track:

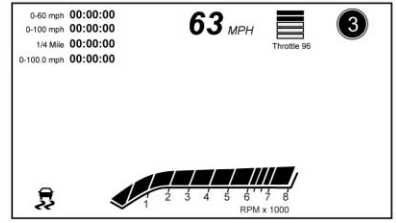


Displays these vehicle metrics:

- Vehicle Speed: Same as Sport.

- GPS Tracking Map: Shows the vehicle's current position relative to a known route.
- Engine Rotations Per Minute (RPMs): Same as Sport.
- Transmission State (Current Gear): Same as Sport.
- Friction Bubble Graphic: Lateral and longitudinal G-Forces are displayed as a dot within a bubble. A red dot displays when the vehicle starts braking and turns green when the vehicle accelerates. The dot is white when the vehicle is not moving. A white dot is the default.
- Brake and Throttle Graphic: Displays the percentage value of brake and throttle pedal position from 0–100%.
- Steering Angle: The graphic fills from the center to the left or right depending on the direction of steering. The numerical steering angle displays below the graphic.
- StabiliTrak Active Indicator: The graphic only displays if the active handling systems are activated.
- Performance Traction Management (PTM) Mode: Displays the current PTM mode. The options are Wet, Dry, Sport 1, Sport 2, or Race.
- Current Lap Time: Displays the elapsed lap time if the finish line is defined and the vehicle has crossed the defined finish line at least once.
- Event Odometer: Displays the mileage driven since the recording began.
- Drive Mode: Displays the vehicle's current drive mode.

Performance Timing:



Displays these vehicle metrics:

- Vehicle Speed: Same as Sport.
- Engine Rotations Per Minute (RPMs): Same as Sport.
- Transmission State (Current Gear): Same as Sport.
- 0–100 km/h (0–60 mph), 0–200 km/h (0–100 mph), 400 m (1/4 mi), and 0–200–0 km/h (0–100–0 mph): The timer starts recording as soon as the vehicle accelerates. As the vehicle passes each speed and distance milestone, it is displayed on the overlay.
- Throttle Position: Displays the percentage of throttle applied from 0–100%.

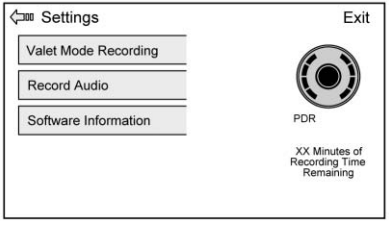
- StabiliTrak Active Indicator: The graphic only displays if the active handling systems are activated.

Naming Convention

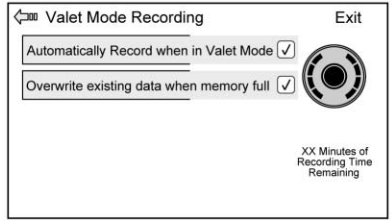
The recorded video file name is stored as the recorded date and the length of the recording.

If the recorded session was recorded while the system was in Valet Mode, the file name will display the mode, date, and length of time.

Settings



Touch the Settings button from the PDR menu to display settings.



Valet Mode Recording : Allows recording preferences to be selected. It is recommended that a blank SD card be used. Available choices are:

- Automatically record when in Valet Mode: Enables the PDR to begin recording as soon as the vehicle is in Valet Mode.
- Overwrite existing data when memory full: Allows manual overwriting of previous recordings, one at a time starting with the oldest, when the current recording requires additional storage to continue.

Audio will not record during Valet Mode.

Record Audio : Allows audio to be recorded along with video.

Audio will not record during Valet Mode.

Software Information : Displays PDR software information and version numbers.

Toolbox Software : Allows for the evaluation of the driver and the vehicle performance on a personal computer after a recorded event. See www.cadillac.com to download the software.

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Base) 163
Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Uplevel) 167

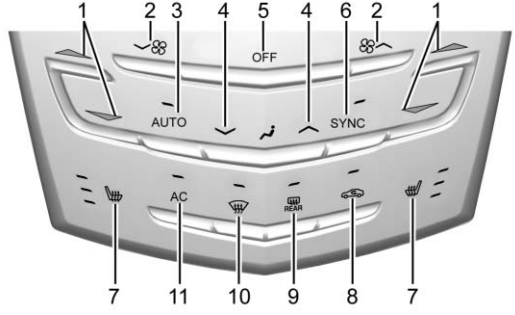
Air Vents
Air Vents 171

Maintenance
Passenger Compartment Air Filter 172
Service 173

Climate Control Systems

Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Base)

If equipped with this system, it controls the heating, cooling, and ventilation.



1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. Fan Control
3. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
4. Air Delivery Mode Control
5. OFF (Fan)
6. SYNC (Synchronized Driver and Passenger Temperature)
7. Driver and Passenger Heated Seats (If Equipped)
8. Recirculation
9. Rear Window Defogger
10. Defrost
11. AC (Air Conditioning)

Climate Control Function with Stop/Start (If Equipped)

The climate control system depends on other vehicle systems for heat and power input. The climate control system will balance stop/start efficiency with air conditioning comfort and defog operation.

The following climate control settings result in fewer auto stops:

- The defrost mode
- High fan speed settings
- Extreme temperature settings

Automatic Operation

The system automatically controls the fan speed, air delivery, air conditioning, and recirculation in order to heat or cool the vehicle to the desired temperature.

When AUTO is lit, all four functions operate automatically. Each function can also be manually set and the selected setting is displayed. Functions not manually set will continue to be automatically controlled, even if the AUTO indicator is not lit.

For automatic operation:

1. Press AUTO.
2. Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilize. Then adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

To improve fuel efficiency and to cool the vehicle faster, recirculation may be automatically selected in warm weather. The recirculation light will not come on. Press to select recirculation; press it again to select outside air.

English units can be changed to metric units through the instrument cluster. See “Settings” under *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *118*.

OFF : Press to turn the fan on or off. When off is selected, the system will stop air from flowing into the cabin. If on is selected, or any other button press occurs, the climate control system will turn on and operate to the current setting. The temperature control and air delivery mode can still be adjusted.

△ **or** ▽ **:** The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and the passenger. Press to increase or decrease the temperature. Press and hold to rapidly increase or decrease the temperature.

SYNC : Press SYNC to link all climate zone settings to the driver settings. The SYNC indicator will be lit. Adjust the driver side temperature control to change the linked temperature. When the passenger settings are adjusted, the temperatures are unlinked and the SYNC indicator turns off.

Manual Operation

∨ **or** ∧ **:** Press the fan control buttons to increase or decrease the fan speed. Press and hold the buttons to adjust speed more quickly. The fan speed setting displays. Pressing either button cancels automatic fan control and the fan can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation. To turn off the fan, press OFF.

: Press the air delivery mode buttons to change the direction of the airflow. Selecting any of the air delivery modes cancels automatic air delivery control and the direction of the airflow can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

To change the current mode, select one of the following:

: Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

: Air is divided between the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

: Air is directed to the floor outlets, with some air to the windshield and side windows.

: Clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield, side windows, and floor outlets. Some air may go to the rear floor outlets.

: Press to turn defrost on or off. This clears the windshield of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield and side windows.

A/C : Press to turn the air conditioning on or off. If the fan is turned off, the air conditioner will not run. Outside temperatures below freezing may also prevent the air conditioner from running.

Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and the air conditioner runs as needed. When the indicator light is on, the air conditioner runs automatically to cool the air inside the vehicle or to dry the air needed to defog the windshield faster.

Automatic Air Recirculation : When the AUTO indicator light is on, the air is automatically recirculated as needed to help quickly cool the inside of the vehicle.

: Press to alternate between recirculating air inside the vehicle or pulling in outside air. The indicator light on the button is lit when recirculation mode is active. This helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle or reduce the outside air and odors that may enter.

Pressing this button cancels automatic recirculation. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation; recirculation runs automatically as needed.

Manual recirculation mode is not available when in Defrost or Defog modes.

Auto Defog : The climate control system may have a sensor to automatically detect high humidity inside the vehicle. When high humidity is detected, the climate control system may adjust to outside air supply and turn on the air conditioner. If the climate control system does not detect possible window fogging, it returns to normal operation. To turn Auto Defog off or on, see “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Rear Window Defogger

REAR **:** Press to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the rear window defogger is on. The rear window defogger only works when the engine is running.

The rear window defogger turns off automatically after about 15 minutes. At higher vehicle speeds, the rear window defogger may stay on continuously.

The upper gridlines on the rear window are antenna lines and are not intended to heat when the defogger is activated.

The heated outside mirrors turn on when the rear window defogger button is on. They help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirrors.

Caution

Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windshield and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window defogger grid and affect the radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

/ or / : If equipped, press to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback.

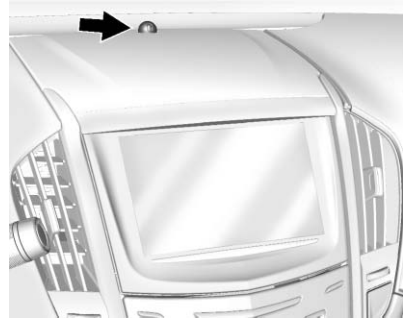
The vehicle also has auto heated seats that turn on when the vehicle is on. The seats will activate at the level required by the vehicle's interior temperature. Use the manual heated seat buttons to turn auto heated seats off. The auto heated seats feature can be turned on or off.
See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141* and *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *64*.

Remote Start Climate Control Operation : If equipped with the remote vehicle start feature, the climate control system may run when the vehicle is started remotely. The system uses the driver's previous settings to heat or cool the inside of the vehicle. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *37*.

The rear window defogger turns on if it is cold outside.

If equipped, the heated seats will turn on if it is cold outside. The heated seat indicator lights may not come on during a remote start. If equipped, the heated steering wheel will come on in a remote start if it is cold outside. The heated steering wheel indicator light may not come on.

Sensors



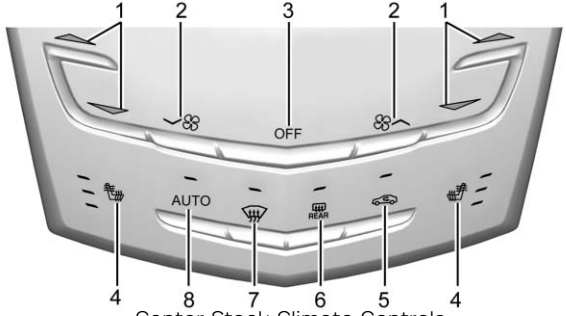
The solar sensor monitors the solar heat.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

If the sensor is covered, the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

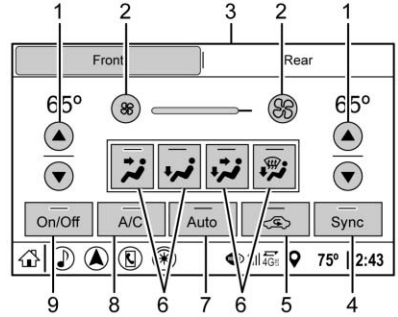
Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Uplevel)

The climate control buttons on the center stack and on the climate control display are used to adjust the heating, cooling, and ventilation.



Center Stack Climate Controls

1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. Fan Control
3. OFF (Fan)
4. Driver and Passenger Heated Seats (If Equipped)
5. Recirculation
6. Rear Window Defogger
7. Defrost
8. AUTO (Automatic Operation)



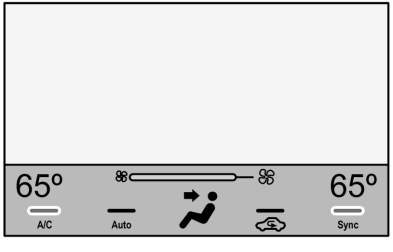
Climate Control Display

1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. Fan Controls
3. REAR (Rear Climate Control Display, If Equipped)
4. Sync (Synchronized Driver and Passenger Temperature)
5. Recirculation
6. Air Delivery Mode Control
7. Auto (Automatic Operation)
8. A/C (Air Conditioning)
9. On/Off

Climate Control Display

The fan, air delivery mode, A/C mode, driver and passenger temperatures, and SYNC settings can be controlled by touching CLIMATE on the infotainment Home Page or the climate button in the display application tray. A selection can then be made on the front climate control page displayed. See the infotainment manual.

Climate Control Status Display



The climate control status display appears briefly when the climate control buttons on the center stack are adjusted. Touching the quick status pane opens the climate application.

Climate Control Function with Stop/Start (If Equipped)

The climate control system depends on other vehicle systems for heat and power input. The climate control system will balance stop/start efficiency with air conditioning comfort and defog operation.

The following climate control settings result in fewer auto stops:

- The defrost mode
- High fan speed settings
- Extreme temperature settings

For maximum air conditioning comfort, use the stop/start disable switch. See “Auto Engine Stop/Start” under *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *192*.

Automatic Operation

The system automatically controls the fan speed, air delivery, air conditioning, and recirculation in order to heat or cool the vehicle to the desired temperature.

When AUTO is lit, all four functions operate automatically. Each function can also be manually set and the selected setting is displayed. Functions not manually set will continue to be automatically controlled, even if the AUTO indicator is not lit.

For automatic operation:

1. Press AUTO.
2. Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilize. Then adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

To improve fuel efficiency and to cool the vehicle faster, recirculation may be automatically selected in warm weather. The recirculation light will not come on. Press to select recirculation; press it again to select outside air.

English units can be changed to metric units through the instrument cluster. See “Settings” under *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *118*.

OFF : Press to turn the fan on or off. When off is selected, the system will stop air from flowing into the cabin. If on is selected, or any other button press occurs, the climate control system will turn on and operate to the current setting. The temperature control and air delivery mode can still be adjusted.

△ or ▽ : The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and the passenger. Press to increase or decrease the temperature. Press and hold to rapidly increase or decrease the temperature. The driver and passenger temperatures can also be adjusted by touching the controls on the climate control display.

SYNC : Touch SYNC on the climate control display to link all climate zone settings to the driver settings. Adjust the driver side temperature control to change the linked temperature. When the passenger settings are adjusted, the SYNC button is displayed when the temperatures are unlinked.

Manual Operation

∨ ⊛ or ⊛ ∧ : Press or touch the fan controls on the center stack or the climate control display to increase or decrease the fan speed. Press and hold the controls to adjust speed more quickly. The fan speed setting displays. Pressing either button cancels automatic fan control and the fan can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation. To turn off the fan and climate control system, press and hold the fan down button on the center stack or the climate control display until it is off.

Air Delivery Mode Control : Touch the air delivery mode on the climate control display to change the direction of the airflow. The selected air delivery mode control is lit. Pressing any of the air delivery controls cancels automatic air delivery control and the direction of the airflow can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

To change the current mode, select one of the following:

: Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

: Air is divided between the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

: Air is directed to the floor outlets, with some air to the windshield and side windows.

: Clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield, side windows, and floor outlets. Some air may go to the rear floor outlets.

: Press to turn defrost on or off. This clears the windshield of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield and side windows.

A/C Mode : Touch A/C Mode on the climate control display to turn the automatic air conditioning on or off. If the fan is turned off, the air conditioner will not run. Outside temperatures below freezing may also prevent the air conditioner from running.

Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and the air conditioner runs as needed.

Automatic Air Recirculation : When the AUTO indicator light is on, the air is automatically recirculated as needed to help quickly cool the inside of the vehicle.

: Press to alternate between recirculating air inside the vehicle or pulling in outside air. The indicator light on the button is lit when recirculation mode is active. This helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle or reduce the outside air and odors that may enter.

Pressing this button cancels automatic recirculation. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation; recirculation runs automatically as needed.

Manual recirculation mode is not available when in Defrost or Defog modes.

Auto Defog : The climate control system may have a sensor to automatically detect high humidity inside the vehicle. When high humidity is detected, the climate control system may adjust to outside air supply and turn on the air conditioner. If the climate control system does not detect possible window fogging, it returns to normal operation. To turn Auto Defog off or on, see “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Rear Window Defogger

REAR **:** Press to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the rear window defogger is on. The rear window defogger only works when the engine is running.

The rear window defogger turns off automatically after about 15 minutes. At higher vehicle speeds, the rear window defogger may stay on continuously.

The upper gridlines on the rear window are antenna lines and are not intended to heat when the defogger is activated.

The heated outside mirrors turn on when the rear window defogger button is on. They help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirrors.

The rear window defogger can be set to automatic operation. See “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*. When auto rear defog is selected, the rear window defogger turns on automatically when the interior temperature is cold and the outside temperature is about 4 °C (40 °F) and below. The auto rear defogger turns off automatically.

Caution

Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windshield and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window defogger grid and affect the radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

or : If equipped, press or to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback.

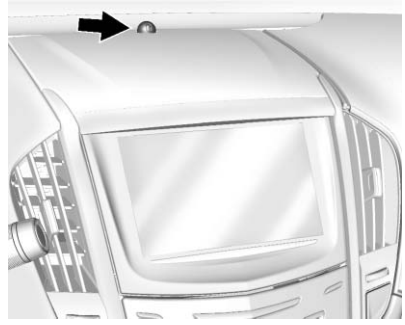
The vehicle also has auto heated seats that turn on when the vehicle is on. The seats will activate at the level required by the vehicle's interior temperature. Use the manual heated seat buttons to turn auto heated seats off. The auto heated seats feature can be turned on or off.
See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141* and *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *64*.

Remote Start Climate Control Operation : If equipped with the remote vehicle start feature, the climate control system may run when the vehicle is started remotely. The system uses the driver's previous settings to heat or cool the inside of the vehicle. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *37*.

The rear window defogger turns on if it is cold outside.

If equipped, the heated seats will turn on if it is cold outside. The heated seat indicator lights may not come on during a remote start. If equipped, the heated steering wheel will come on in a remote start if it is cold outside. The heated steering wheel indicator light may not come on.

Sensor



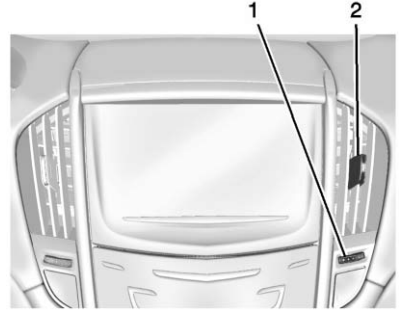
The solar sensor monitors the solar heat.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

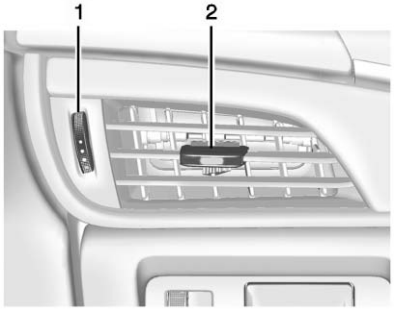
If the sensor is covered, the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

Air Vents

Adjustable air vents are in the center and on the side of the instrument panel.



Use the thumbwheels (1) near the air vents to open or close off the airflow.



Move the slats (2) to change the direction of the airflow.

Additional air vents are beneath the windshield and the driver and passenger door windows. These are fixed and cannot be adjusted.

Operation Tips

- Clear away any ice, snow, or leaves from air inlets at the base of the windshield that could block the flow of air into the vehicle.
- Clear snow off the hood to improve visibilty and help decrease moisture drawn into the vehicle.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside the vehicle more effectively.
- Use of non-GM approved hood deflectors can adversely affect the performance of the system. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of the vehicle.
- Do not attach any devices to the air vent slats. This restricts airflow and may cause damage to the air vents.

Maintenance

Passenger Compartment Air Filter

The filter reduces dust, pollen, and other airborne irritants from outside air that is pulled into the vehicle. The filter should be replaced as part of routine scheduled maintenance. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *336*.

See your dealer regarding replacement of the filter.

Service

All vehicles have a label underhood that identifies the refrigerant used in the vehicle. The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. The air conditioning evaporator should never be repaired or replaced by one from a salvage vehicle. It should only be replaced by a new evaporator to ensure proper and safe operation.

During service, all refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment. Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to the environment and may also create unsafe conditions based on inhalation, combustion, frostbite, or other health-based concerns.

Driving and Operating

Driving Information

Distracted Driving 175
Defensive Driving 176
Drunk Driving 176
Control of a Vehicle 176
Braking 176
Steering 177
Off-Road Recovery 177
Loss of Control 178
Track Events and Competitive Driving 178
Driving on Wet Roads 183
Hill and Mountain Roads 184
Winter Driving 184
If the Vehicle Is Stuck 186
Vehicle Load Limits 186

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In 189
Composite Materials 190
Ignition Positions 190
Starting the Engine 192
Engine Heater 194
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 195
Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission) 195
Shifting out of Park 196
Parking (Manual Transmission) 197
Parking over Things That Burn 197
Extended Parking 197

Engine Exhaust

Engine Exhaust 198
Running the Vehicle While Parked 199

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission 199
Manual Mode 201

Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission 203
Active Rev Match 204

Drive Systems

All-Wheel Drive 205

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS) 205
Parking Brake (Electric) 206
Parking Brake (Manual) 208
Brake Assist 208
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 209

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control 209
Driver Mode Control 210
Competitive Driving Mode (FE3 Only) 214
Limited-Slip Rear Axle (Except V-Series) 217
Limited-Slip Rear Axle (V-Series Only) 217

Cruise Control

Cruise Control 218
Adaptive Cruise Control 220

Driver Assistance Systems

Driver Assistance Systems 228
Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing 229
Assistance Systems for Driving 232
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 232
Forward Automatic Braking (FAB) 235
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 236
Lane Change Alert (LCA) 237
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 238
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 239

Fuel

Fuel 240
California Fuel Requirements 241
Fuels in Foreign Countries 242
Fuel Additives 242
Filling the Tank 242
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 244

Trailer Towing

General Towing Information 244
Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips 244
Trailer Towing (Sedan With V6 Engine Except V-Series) 247
Trailer Towing (Sedan With L4 Engine, Coupe, and V-Series) 248
Towing Equipment (Sedan With V6 Engine Except V-Series) 248
Towing Equipment (Sedan With L4 Engine, Coupe, and V-Series) 249

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment ... 249

Driving Information

Distracted Driving

Distraction comes in many forms and can take your focus from the task of driving. Exercise good judgment and do not let other activities divert your attention away from the road. Many local governments have enacted laws regarding driver distraction. Become familiar with the local laws in your area.

To avoid distracted driving, keep your eyes on the road, keep your hands on the steering wheel, and focus your attention on driving.

- Do not use a phone in demanding driving situations. Use a hands-free method to place or receive necessary phone calls.
- Watch the road. Do not read, take notes, or look up information on phones or other electronic devices.
- Designate a front seat passenger to handle potential distractions.
- Become familiar with vehicle features before driving, such as programming favorite radio stations and adjusting climate control and seat settings. Program all trip information into any navigation device prior to driving.
- Wait until the vehicle is parked to retrieve items that have fallen to the floor.
- Stop or park the vehicle to tend to children.
- Keep pets in an appropriate carrier or restraint.
- Avoid stressful conversations while driving, whether with a passenger or on a cell phone.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road too long or too often could cause a crash resulting in injury or death. Focus your attention on driving.

Refer to the infotainment manual for more information on using that system and the navigation system, if equipped, including pairing and using a cell phone.

Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means “always expect the unexpected.” The first step in driving defensively is to wear the seat belt. See *Seat Belts* ⇨ *70*.

- Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready.
- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

Drunk Driving

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a global tragedy.

⚠ Warning

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking.

Do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.

Control of a Vehicle

Braking, steering, and accelerating are important factors in helping to control a vehicle while driving.

Braking

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average driver reaction time is about three-quarters of a second. In that time, a vehicle moving at 100 km/h (60 mph) travels 20 m (66 ft), which could be a lot of distance in an emergency.

Helpful braking tips to keep in mind include:

- Keep enough distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid needless heavy braking.
- Keep pace with traffic.

If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. Doing so could make the pedal harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will be some power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Steering

Variable Effort Steering

The vehicle has a steering system that varies the amount of effort required to steer the vehicle in relation to the speed of the vehicle.

The amount of steering effort required is less at slower speeds to make the vehicle more maneuverable and easier to park. At faster speeds, the steering effort increases to provide a sport-like feel to the steering. This provides maximum control and stability.

Electric Power Steering

The vehicle has electric power steering. It does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If power steering assist is lost due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered, but may require increased effort. See your dealer if there is a problem.

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel and is held against that position for an extended period of time, power steering assist may be reduced.

If the steering assist is used for an extended period of time while the vehicle is not moving, power assist may be reduced.

Normal use of the power steering assist should return when the system cools down.

See your dealer if there is a problem.

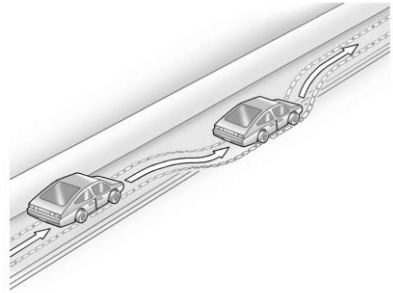
Curve Tips

- Take curves at a reasonable speed.
- Reduce speed before entering a curve.
- Maintain a reasonable steady speed through the curve.
- Wait until the vehicle is out of the curve before accelerating gently into the straightaway.

Steering in Emergencies

- There are some situations when steering around a problem may be more effective than braking.
- Holding both sides of the steering wheel allows you to turn 180 degrees without removing a hand.
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) allows steering while braking.

Off-Road Recovery



The vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving. Follow these tips:

1. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer the vehicle so that it straddles the edge of the pavement.
2. Turn the steering wheel about one-eighth of a turn, until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge.
3. Turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Loss of Control

Skidding

There are three types of skids that correspond to the vehicle's three control systems:

- Braking Skid — wheels are not rolling.
- Steering or Cornering Skid — too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force.
- Acceleration Skid — too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

If the vehicle starts to slide, follow these suggestions:

- Ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and steer the way you want the vehicle to go. The vehicle may straighten out. Be ready for a second skid if it occurs.
- Slow down and adjust your driving according to weather conditions. Stopping distance can be longer and vehicle control can be affected when traction is reduced by water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material on the road. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.
- Try to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide.

Remember: Antilock brakes help avoid only the braking skid.

Track Events and Competitive Driving

⚠ Danger

High-performance features are intended for use only on closed tracks by experienced and qualified drivers and should not be used on public roads. High-speed driving, aggressive cornering, hard braking, and other high-performance driving can be dangerous. Improper driver inputs for the conditions may result in loss of control of the vehicle, which could injure or kill you or others. Always drive safely.

Competitive driving may affect the vehicle warranty. See the warranty manual before using the vehicle for competitive driving.

Caution

Low oil levels can damage the engine. If using the vehicle for competitive driving, the engine may use more oil than it would with normal use. Check the oil level often during competitive driving.

Competitive Driving Mode can be selected. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *210*.

Engine Oil

2.0L L4 Turbo Engine (LTG) Only:

- Use a 600 W fan in addition to the production option V03.
- Premium fuel must be used for competitive driving to protect against engine damage. Colder spark plug ratings should also be used. Consult your dealer.

3.6L V6 Non-Turbo (LGX) Engine Only:

- 3.6L V6 Non-Turbo Engine (LGX) with Oil Cooler: Confirm the oil level is at the upper mark that shows the proper operating range on the engine oil dipstick.
- 3.6L V6 Non-Turbo Engine (LGX) without Oil Cooler: Do not use for track events and competitive driving.

3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LF4) Only:

- The 3.6L V6 twin turbo engine (LF4) requires premium fuel, and comes standard with a 7 qt sump, integrated oil cooler, and other powertrain and powertrain cooling components in preparation for track use.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

Have the transmission fluid set to the track specific oil level prior to track usage. Transmission fluid should be changed after every 15 hours of track usage. Any transmission level set or change should be performed at your dealer.

Manual Transmission Fluid

Manual transmission fluid should be changed after every 15 hours of track usage.

Brake Fluid

- Before racing, replace existing brake fluid with a qualified racing brake fluid from a sealed container. Brake fluid with a dry boiling point >279 °C (534 °F) is qualified. If racing brake fluid is used, replace it with GM approved brake fluid before driving on public roads. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *345*.
- Do not use silicone-based fluids.

If racing brake fluid is in the vehicle and the age of the brake fluid is over a month old or unknown, replace the brake fluid between racing/closed track driving.

Caution

Failure to change the brake fluid and transfer case fluid after any performance or race track driving could result in damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have the brake fluid and transfer case fluid changed by your dealer after any performance or race track driving. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *345*.

Brake Burnishing

For vehicles equipped with front Brembo brake systems:

Base Vehicles Only: Performance/racing brake pads are required prior to racing or closed track driving. Vehicles with option code Y4Q have performance brake pads.

New brake pads must be burnished before racing or other competitive driving.

Caution

Performing the brake burnish procedure on a base brake system can result in brake damage.

Caution

The new vehicle break-in period should be completed before performing the brake burnish procedure, otherwise damage may occur to the powertrain/engine. See *New Vehicle Break-In* ⇨ *189*.

Caution

Brake pedal fade will occur during any track burnish procedure and can cause brake pedal travel and force to increase. This could extend stopping distance until the brakes are fully burnished.

When this procedure is performed as instructed, it will not damage the brakes. The brake pads will smoke and produce an odor. The braking force and pedal travel may increase. After the procedure, the brake pads may appear white at the rotor contact.

Perform this procedure only on dry pavement, in a safe manner, and in compliance with all local and state ordinances/laws regarding motor vehicle operation.

Brake Burnish Procedure (V-Series and Y4Q Only)

1. Apply the brakes 25 times starting at 100 km/h (60 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph) while decelerating at 0.4 g. This is a medium brake application. Drive for at least 1 km (0.6 mi) between applying the brakes. This first step may be skipped if there are more than 320 km (200 mi) on the brake pads.
2. Repeatedly apply the brakes from 100 km/h (60 mph) to 25 km/h (15 mph) while decelerating at 0.8 g. This is a hard brake

application, without activating the Antilock Brake System (ABS). Drive for at least 1 km (0.6 mi) between stops. Repeat until the brake pedal travel starts to increase. Depending on conditions, this should take no longer than 25 brake applications.

3. Cool down: Drive at 100 km/h (60 mph) for approximately 15 km (10 mi) without using the brakes.
4. Apply the brakes 25 times from 100 km/h (60 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph) while decelerating at 0.4 g. This is a medium brake application. Drive for at least 1 km (0.6 mi) between applications.

Axle Fluid

Axles must have 805 km (500 mi) before being used in track driving.

The front, if equipped with AWD, and rear axle fluid temperatures may be higher than when driving in severe conditions. Drain and refill with new fluid after the first racing or competitive driving event, and then after every 24 hours of racing or competitive driving. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *345*.

Caution

During a first time track or racing event, high axle temperatures can occur. Damage could be caused to the axle and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not drive as long or as fast the first time the vehicle is driven on the track or raced.

- The axle lubricant should be replaced with new lubricant.
- Additional cooling capacity is also required for continuous competitive driving.

Track Battery

If equipped, this is a lightweight, low power battery for track use only. Remove after each event.

Only use this battery when temperatures are above freezing. Store in a cool, dry location. Charge periodically to keep the state of charge from getting too low. A battery tender can be used.

When installing or removing the track battery, steps must be followed to calibrate the electronic throttle control. See *Battery - North America* ⇨ *273*.

Wheel Alignment (V-Series Only)

Wheel alignment suggested specs for track use:

- Front: -2.0 deg camber, 0.2 deg total toe
- Rear: -1.7 deg camber, 0.2 deg total toe

V-Series Vehicles Equipped with the Original Equipment Tires

Follow the requirements and recommendations for tire inflation pressures while driving on various types of tracks/courses. This helps to achieve a well-balanced vehicle and enhance tire traction performance.

Use good judgment to determine the appropriate tire inflation pressure and speeds for the track/course configuration and environmental conditions. Contact the tire manufacturer if further assistance is needed.

To maximize tire life, drive 800 km (500 mi) prior to racetrack driving or complete the minimum track running that will increase the tire pressures by 35 kPa (5 psi). After this, immediately let the tires cool to cold pressures.

Tire Inflation Pressure Guidelines

Tire inflation pressures affect vehicle handling and tire life, and should be adjusted for various types of tracks/courses.

Inspect the tires prior to every track/course session. Track/course driving will reduce the tire tread life.

Driving and Operating

⚠ Warning

Operating the vehicle at high speeds can be dangerous. Improper tire inflation pressure can put additional strain on the tires and can cause a sudden failure. Make sure the tires are in excellent condition, and use the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load and track/course.

⚠ Warning

Tracks/courses put high loads on tires operating at high speed, which can lead to tire failure if not inflated properly. Always limit vehicle cargo to the driver plus one passenger with no additional cargo.

⚠ Warning

Track/course loads wear tires both on the tread and internal to the tire. When driven in track/course conditions, even if tread is not worn down to the treadwear indicator, tires must be replaced after the equivalent of two tanks of fuel or approximately 160 km (100 mi).

Tire Inflation Pressure for Tracks with Sustained High-Speed Operation on Banked Turns

(e.g., Daytona International Speedway, Indianapolis Motor Speedway, or similar)

Inflate tires to a minimum of 300 kPa (44 psi) when cold.

Do not reduce tire inflation pressure when hot.

Tire Inflation Pressure for Tracks with Combined High-Speed and High-Load Corners

(e.g., Nurburgring Nordschliefe, Spa Francorchamps, or similar)

Inflate tires to a minimum of 260 kPa (38 psi) when cold.

Limit vehicle speed to below 230 km/h (143 mph) until 290 kPa (42 psi) is reached.

For continuous track use, hot tire inflation pressure may be adjusted to a minimum of 290 kPa (42 psi).

Tire Inflation Pressure for Road/ Street Courses

(e.g., Virginia International Raceway, Road Atlanta, or similar)

Inflate tires to a minimum of 240 kPa (35 psi) cold.

For continuous road/street course use, hot tire inflation pressure may be adjusted to a minimum of 270 kPa (39 psi).

Return the tires to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure when high-speed driving has ended.
See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186* and *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *298*.

Driving on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

⚠ Warning

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause the vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under the vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When the vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires* ⇨ *290*.
- Turn off cruise control.

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission.
- Shift to a lower gear when going down steep or long hills.

> ⚠ **Warning**
>
> Using the brakes to slow the vehicle on a long downhill slope can cause brake overheating, can reduce brake performance, and could result in a loss of braking. Shift the transmission to a lower gear to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

> ⚠ **Warning**
>
> Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. This can cause overheating of the brakes and loss of steering assist. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear.

- Drive at speeds that keep the vehicle in its own lane. Do not swing wide or cross the center line.
- Be alert on top of hills; something could be in your lane (e.g., stalled car, accident).
- Pay attention to special road signs (e.g., falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

Winter Driving

Driving on Snow or Ice

Snow or ice between the tires and the road creates less traction or grip, so drive carefully. Wet ice can occur at about 0 °C (32 °F) when freezing rain begins to fall. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated.

For Slippery Road Driving:

- Accelerate gently. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tires slick.
- Turn on Traction Control. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *209*.

- Antilock Brake System (ABS) improves vehicle stability during hard stops, but the brakes should be applied sooner than when on dry pavement. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ *205*.
- Allow greater following distance and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. Avoid sudden steering maneuvers and braking while on ice.
- Turn off cruise control.

Blizzard Conditions

Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. If possible, use Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *358*. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.

⚠ Warning

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle is stuck in snow:

- Clear snow from the base of the vehicle, especially any blocking the exhaust pipe.
- Open a window about 5 cm (2 in) on the vehicle side that is away from the wind, to bring in fresh air.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to circulate the air inside the vehicle and set the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems.”

For more information about CO, see *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *198*.

To save fuel, run the engine for short periods to warm the vehicle and then shut the engine off and partially close the window. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes time for help to arrive, when running the engine, push the accelerator pedal slightly so the engine runs faster than the idle speed. This keeps the battery charged to restart the vehicle and to signal for help with the headlamps. Do this as little as possible, to save fuel.

If the Vehicle Is Stuck

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow.

If stuck too severely for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method. See *Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *209*.

> ⚠ **Warning**
>
> If the vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 56 km/h (35 mph).

Rocking the Vehicle to Get it Out

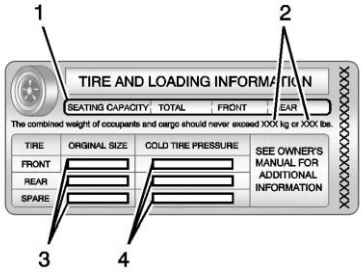
Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction system. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a low forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ *322*.

Vehicle Load Limits

It is very important to know how much weight the vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on the vehicle may show how much weight it may properly carry: the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification label.

> ⚠ **Warning**
>
> Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also reduce stopping distance, damage the tires, and shorten the life of the vehicle.

Tire and Loading Information Label



Label Example

A vehicle-specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). The Tire and Loading Information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (1), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (2) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tire and Loading Information label also shows the tire size of the original equipment tires (3) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (4). For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires* ⇨ *290* and *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *298*.

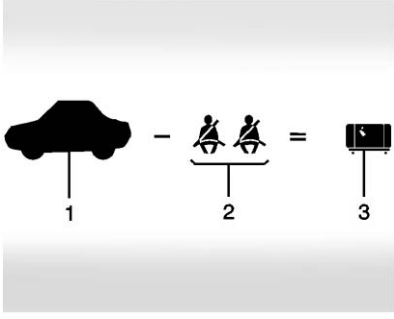
There is also important loading information on the Certification label. It may show the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axle. See “Certification Label” later in this section.

“Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit–

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how

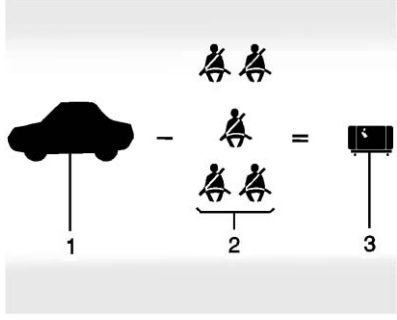
this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle."

See *Trailer Towing (Sedan With V6 Engine Except V-Series)* ⇨ *247* or *Trailer Towing (Sedan With L4 Engine, Coupe, and V-Series)* ⇨ *248* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules, and trailering tips.



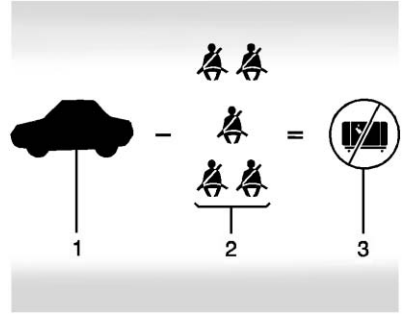
Example 1

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 2 = 136 kg (300 lbs).
3. Available Occupant and Cargo Weight = 317 kg (700 lbs).



Example 2

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 5 = 340 kg (750 lbs).
3. Available Cargo Weight = 113 kg (250 lbs).



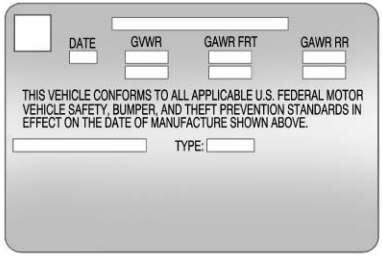
Example 3

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 91 kg (200 lbs) × 5 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
3. Available Cargo Weight = 0 kg (0 lbs).

Refer to the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label for specific information about the vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined

weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed the vehicle's capacity weight.

Certification Label



Label Example

A vehicle-specific Certification label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). The label may show the gross weight capacity of the vehicle, called the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, and cargo.

⚠ Warning

Things inside the vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put things in the cargo area of the vehicle. In the cargo area, put them as far forward as possible. Try to spread the weight evenly.
- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in the vehicle.
- Secure loose items in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless needed.

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In

Follow these recommended guidelines during the first 2 414 km (1,500 mi) of driving this vehicle. Parts have a break-in period and performance will be better in the long run.

For the first 2 414 km (1,500 mi):

- Avoid full throttle starts and abrupt stops.
- Do not exceed 4000 engine rpm.
- Avoid driving at any one constant speed, fast or slow.
- Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle when the engine speed will exceed 4000 rpm.
- Do not let the engine labor. Never lug the engine in high gear at low speeds. With a manual transmission, shift to the next lower gear. This rule applies at all times, not just during the break-in period.

- Check engine oil with every refueling and add if necessary. Oil and fuel consumption may be higher than normal during the first 2 414 km (1,500 mi).
- New brake linings also need a break-in period. Avoid making hard stops during the first 322 km (200 mi). This is recommended every time brake linings are replaced.

Composite Materials

This vehicle may be equipped with parts containing carbon fiber, sheet-molding compound, or other composite materials. Dealer-installed accessories may also contain composite materials. These parts and accessories may include the splitter or rocker extensions.

⚠ Warning

Exposed edges of parts containing carbon fiber and other composite materials can be sharp. Contact with these parts could result in injury. Use caution to avoid contacting these parts, including when washing the vehicle. If the parts are damaged, replace the parts promptly with replacements from your dealer.

⚠ Warning

Rocker extensions may break under pressure, resulting in property damage or injury. Do not stand on the rocker extension or use it as a step.

Ignition Positions

The vehicle has an electronic keyless ignition with pushbutton start.

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be in the vehicle for the system to operate. If the pushbutton start is not working, the vehicle may be near a strong radio antenna signal causing interference to the Keyless Access system. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

To shift out of P (Park), the vehicle must be in on and the brake pedal must be applied.

Stopping the Engine/OFF (No Indicator Lights) : When the vehicle is stopped, press ENGINE START/STOP once to turn the engine off.

If the vehicle is in P (Park), the ignition will turn off, and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *195*.

Automatic Transmission

If the vehicle is not in P (Park), the ignition will return to ACC/ACCESSORY and display a message in the Driver Information Center (DIC). When the vehicle is shifted into P (Park), the ignition will turn off.

Manual Transmission

If the vehicle is stationary, the ignition will turn off, and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *195*.

The vehicle may have an electric steering column lock. The lock is activated when the ignition is turned off and either front door is opened. A sound may be heard as the lock actuates or releases. The steering column lock may not release with the wheels turned off center. If this happens, the vehicle may not start. Move the steering wheel from left to right while attempting to start the vehicle. If this does not work, the vehicle needs service.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving. This will cause a loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags.

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop. Shift to P (Park) with an automatic transmission, or Neutral with a manual transmission. Turn the ignition off.
4. Set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *206* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *208*.

⚠ Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over, and must be shut off while driving, press and hold ENGINE START/STOP for longer than two seconds, or press twice within five seconds.

ACC/ACCESSORY (Amber Indicator Light) : This mode allows you to use some electrical accessories when the engine is off.

With the ignition off, pressing the button one time without the brake pedal applied will place the ignition system in ACC/ACCESSORY.

The ignition will switch from ACC/ACCESSORY to OFF after five minutes to prevent battery rundown.

ON/RUN/START (Green Indicator Light) : This mode is for driving and starting. With the ignition off, and the brake pedal applied, pressing the button once will turn the ignition on. Once engine cranking begins, release the button. Engine cranking will continue until the engine starts. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *192*. The ignition will then remain on.

Service Mode

This power mode is available for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes. With the vehicle off, and the brake pedal not applied, pressing and holding the button for more than five seconds will place the vehicle in Service Mode. The instruments and audio systems will operate as they do in ON/RUN/START, but the vehicle will not be able to be driven. The engine will not start in Service Mode. Push the button again to turn the vehicle off.

Starting the Engine

Place the transmission in the proper gear.

Caution

If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Any resulting damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *249*.

Automatic Transmission

Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). To restart the vehicle when it is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

Caution

Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.

Manual Transmission

The shift lever should be in Neutral and the parking brake engaged. Hold the clutch pedal down to the floor and start the engine.

Starting Procedure

1. With the Keyless Access system, the RKE transmitter must be in the vehicle. Press ENGINE START/STOP with the brake pedal applied. When the engine begins cranking, let go of the button.

   The idle speed will go down as the engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it.

If the RKE transmitter is not in the vehicle, if there is interference, or if the RKE battery is low, the Driver Information Center (DIC) will display a message. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

Caution

Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by pressing ENGINE START/STOP immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.

2. If the engine does not start after five to 10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below –18 °C or 0 °F), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you press ENGINE START/STOP, for up to a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the button and the accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

Stop/Start System

⚠ Warning

The automatic engine Stop/Start feature causes the engine to shut off while the vehicle is still on. Do not exit the vehicle before shifting to P (Park) for an automatic transmission or N (Neutral) for a manual transmission. The vehicle

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

may restart and move unexpectedly. Always shift to P (Park), or shift to N (Neutral) and set the parking brake, and then turn the ignition off before exiting the vehicle.

The vehicle may have a fuel saving stop/start system to shut off the engine and help conserve fuel.

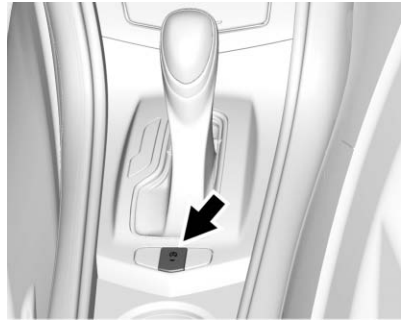
Auto Engine Stop/Start

When the brakes are applied and the vehicle is at a complete stop, the engine may turn off. When stopped, the tachometer may point to AUTO STOP. See *Tachometer* ⇨ *121*. When the brake pedal is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed, the engine may restart.

Auto Stop may be deactivated if:

- A minimum vehicle speed is not reached.
- The engine or transmission is not at the required operating temperature.

- The outside temperature is not in the required operating range, typically below –10 °C (14 °F) or above 50 °C (122 °F).
- The shift lever is in any gear other than D (Drive).
- The battery has been recently disconnected.
- The battery charge is low.
- The interior comfort level has not reached the required level for the climate control system or defog settings.
  See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Uplevel)* ⇨ *167* or *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Base)* ⇨ *163*.
- The Auto Stop time is greater than two minutes.



The automatic engine stop/start function can be disabled using the switch. The indicator on the switch will illuminate when the system is operational.

Engine Heater

Vehicles with the engine heater can use this option in cold weather conditions at or below –18 °C (0 °F) for easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up. Plug in the engine heater at least four hours before starting your vehicle. An internal thermostat in the plug-end of the cord may exist which will prevent engine heater operation at temperatures above –18 °C (0 °F).

To Use the Engine Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. The cord is clipped to the diagonal brace on the passenger side of the engine compartment.

   Check the heater cord for damage. If it is damaged, do not use it. See your dealer for a replacement. Inspect the cord for damage yearly.
3. Plug it into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

⚠ Warning

Improper use of the heater cord or an extension cord can damage the cord and may result in overheating and fire.

- Plug the cord into a three-prong electrical utility receptacle that is protected by a ground fault detection function. An ungrounded outlet could cause an electric shock.
- Use a weatherproof, heavy-duty, 15 amp-rated extension cord if needed. Failure to use the recommended extension cord in good operating condition, or using a damaged heater or extension cord, could make it

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

overheat and cause a fire, property damage, electric shock, and injury.

- Do not operate the vehicle with the heater cord permanently attached to the vehicle. Possible heater cord and thermostat damage could occur.
- While in use, do not let the heater cord touch vehicle parts or sharp edges. Never close the hood on the heater cord.
- Before starting the vehicle, unplug the cord, reattach the cover to the plug, and securely fasten the cord. Keep the cord away from any moving parts.

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you do not, it could be damaged.

Contact your dealer for information on how long to use the heater in your particular area.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

Some vehicle accessories may be used after the ignition is turned off.

The power windows and sunroof, if equipped, will continue to work for up to 10 minutes or until any door is opened.

The infotainment system will continue to work for 10 minutes, until the driver door is opened, or until the ignition is turned on or placed in ACC/ACCESSORY.

Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission)

To shift into P (Park):

1. Hold the brake pedal down and set the parking brake.

   See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *206* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *208*.

2. Move the shift lever into P (Park) by holding in the button on the shift lever and pushing the lever all the way toward the front of the vehicle.
3. Turn the ignition off.
4. Take the Remote Keyless Access (RKE) transmitter with you.

Leaving the Vehicle with the Engine Running (Automatic Transmission)

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. It could overheat and catch fire.

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission)* ⇨ *195*. If you are towing a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *244*.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, the vehicle must be in P (Park) with the parking brake set. After shifting into P (Park), try to move the shift lever without first pressing the button on the shift lever.

If you can, the shift lever was not fully locked into P (Park).

Torque Lock (Automatic Transmission)

Torque lock is when the weight of the vehicle puts too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. This happens when parking on a hill and shifting the transmission into P (Park) is not done properly and then it is difficult to shift out of P (Park). To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park). To find out how, see "Shifting Into Park" listed previously.

If torque lock does occur, the vehicle may need to be pushed uphill by another vehicle to relieve the parking pawl pressure, so you can shift out of P (Park).

Shifting out of Park

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic shift lock release system. The shift lock release is designed to prevent movement of the shift lever out of P (Park), unless the ignition is on and the brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock release is always functional except in the case of an uncharged or low voltage (less than 9 volt) battery.

If the vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *320*.

To shift out of P (Park):

1. Apply the brake pedal.
2. Turn the ignition on.
3. Release the parking brake. See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *206* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *208*.
4. Press the shift lever button.
5. Move the shift lever.

If unable to shift out of P (Park):

1. Fully release the shift lever button.
2. While holding down the brake pedal, press the shift lever button again.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the shift lever will not move from P (Park), consult your dealer or a professional towing service.

Parking (Manual Transmission)

If the vehicle has a manual transmission, before getting out of the vehicle, move the shift lever into R (Reverse) if parking on a downhill slope. On a level surface or an uphill slope, use 1 (First) gear. Apply the parking brake. Turn the wheels toward the curb for a downhill slope, or away from the curb for an uphill slope. Once the shift lever has been placed into gear with the clutch pedal pressed in, turn the ignition to off, and release the clutch.

Parking over Things That Burn

⚠ Warning

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

Extended Parking

It is best not to park with the vehicle running. If the vehicle is left running, be sure it will not move and there is adequate ventilation.
See *Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission)* ⇨ *195* and *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *198*.

If the vehicle is left parked and running with the RKE transmitter outside the vehicle, it will turn off after one hour.

If the vehicle is left parked and running with the RKE transmitter inside the vehicle, it will turn off after two hours.

The vehicle could turn off sooner if it is parked on a hill, due to lack of available fuel.

Automatic Transmission

The timer will reset if the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) while it is running.

Manual Transmission

The timer will reset if the vehicle speed is greater than 4 km/h (2.5 mph).

Engine Exhaust

⚠ Warning

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged, or improperly repaired.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running.

If the vehicle is left with the engine running, follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move.
See *Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission)* ⇨ *195* and *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *198*. If the vehicle has a manual transmission, see *Parking (Manual Transmission)* ⇨ *197*.

If parking on a hill and pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *244*.

Automatic Transmission

P : This position locks the drive wheels. Use P (Park) when starting the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily.

⚠ Warning

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park).
See *Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission)* ⇨ *195* and *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *244*.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in P (Park) before starting the engine. The vehicle has an electronic shift lock release system. Fully apply the regular brakes first and then press the shift lever button before shifting from P (Park) with the ignition on. If you cannot shift out of P (Park), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way into P (Park) as you maintain brake application.

Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting out of Park* ⇨ *196*.

Caution

Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.

R : Use this gear to back up.

At low vehicle speeds, R (Reverse) can be used to rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging the transmission. See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck* ⇨ *186*.

N : In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

⚠ Warning

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

Caution

Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.

Caution

A transmission hot message may display if the automatic transmission fluid is too hot. Driving under this condition can damage the vehicle. Stop and idle the engine to cool the automatic transmission fluid. This message clears when the transmission fluid has cooled sufficiently.

D : This position is for normal driving. If more power is needed for passing, press the accelerator pedal down.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding; see “Skidding” under *Loss of Control* ⇨ *178*.

Caution

Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If the vehicle is stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

While in Sport or Track Mode, the vehicle monitors driving behavior, and automatically enables Performance Shift Features when spirited driving is detected. These features maintain lower transmission gears to increase available engine braking and improve acceleration response. The vehicle will exit these features and return to normal operation after a short period when no spirited driving is detected. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *210*.

The transmission will shift down a gear to help hold vehicle speed and reduce brake wear when:

- Driving on a steep descent.
- The shift lever is in D (Drive).
- Frequent braking is required.

If the brake remains applied, the transmission will downshift until 3 (Third) gear is reached. If the brake is released for some time, the transmission will upshift a gear. If the road levels out and the accelerator pedal is pressed, the transmission will upshift until the appropriate gear is reached.

Manual Mode

Driver Shift Control (DSC)

Caution

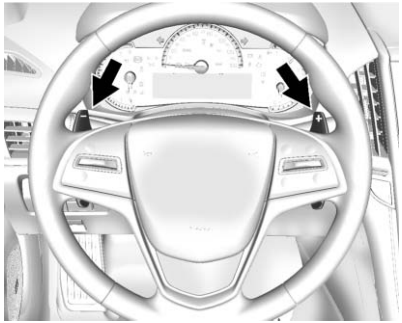
Driving with the engine at a high rpm without upshifting while using Driver Shift Control (DSC), could damage the vehicle. Always upshift when necessary while using DSC.

Vehicles with DSC may either use the shift lever or the tap shift controls on the back of the steering wheel (if equipped) to manually shift the automatic transmission.

To use DSC using the shift lever:

1. Move the shift lever to the left from D (Drive) to M (Manual Mode). The transmission will be in Manual Mode and will hold the current gear.
2. Move the shift lever forward to upshift or rearward to downshift.
3. To cancel DSC, move the shift lever back to D (Drive).

Tap Shift



If equipped, the tap shift controls are on the back of the steering wheel.

To use DSC using the tap shift controls:

1. Move the shift lever to the left from D (Drive) to M (Manual Mode). The transmission will be in Manual Mode and will hold the current gear.
2. Pull the control toward you to shift. Pull the left control to (–) downshift, and the right control to (+) upshift. To shift to the lowest available gear, press and hold the left control (-).
3. To cancel DSC, move the shift lever back to D (Drive).

Tap Shift Mode can also be used temporarily while driving in D (Drive). Pull either the (+) upshift or (-) downshift control.

To cancel Tap Shift Mode, hold the (+) upshift control for two seconds. If no action is taken, the vehicle returns to automatic shifting after a brief period of driving at a steady speed, or when the vehicle comes to a stop.

While using the DSC feature, the vehicle will have firmer, quicker shifting. This can be used for sport driving, climbing or descending hills, staying in gear longer, downshifting for more power, or engine braking.

The transmission will only allow shifting into gears appropriate for the vehicle speed and engine revolutions per minute (rpm). The transmission will not automatically shift to the next higher gear if the engine rpm is too high.

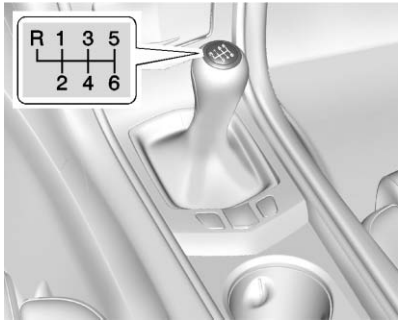
If shifting is prevented for any reason, a DIC message will appear.

When accelerating the vehicle from a stop in snowy and icy conditions, it is suggested to shift into second gear, or third gear as available. A higher gear allows the vehicle to gain more traction on slippery surfaces. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *210*.

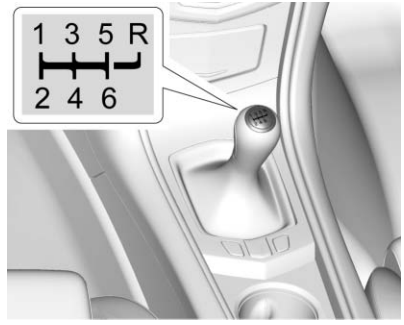
Manual Transmission

If equipped, this is the shift pattern for the manual transmission.

ATS



ATS-V



Caution

A transmission hot message may display if the manual transmission fluid is too hot. Driving at high speed under this condition can damage the vehicle. Drive at a slower speed, or stop and idle the engine to cool the manual transmission fluid. The message clears when the vehicle has slowed and the transmission fluid has cooled sufficiently.

1 (First) : Press the clutch pedal and shift into 1 (First). Slowly let up on the clutch pedal while pressing on the accelerator pedal.

After a complete stop, if it is hard to shift into 1 (First), let up on the clutch pedal, then press it back down and shift into 1 (First).

2 (Second) : Press the clutch pedal and let up on the accelerator pedal, then shift into 2 (Second). Then, slowly let up on the clutch pedal while accelerating.

3 (Third), 4 (Fourth), 5 (Fifth), and 6 (Sixth) : Shift into 3 (Third), 4 (Fourth), 5 (Fifth), and 6 (Sixth) the same as 2 (Second).

To stop, let up on the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal. Just before the vehicle stops, press the clutch pedal and the brake pedal, and shift to Neutral.

Neutral : Use this position when you start or idle the engine. The shift lever is in Neutral when it is centered in the shift pattern, not in any gear.

R (Reverse) : To back up, press down the clutch pedal, completely stop the vehicle, and shift into R (Reverse). On ATS models, apply additional pressure to get the lever past 1 (First) and 2 (Second) into R (Reverse). Let up on the clutch pedal slowly while pressing the accelerator pedal.

⚠ Warning

If you skip a gear when downshifting, you could lose control of the vehicle. You could injure yourself or others. Do not shift down more than one gear at a time when downshifting.

Caution

When downshifting, if more than one gear is skipped, or the engine is racing when the clutch pedal is released, the engine, clutch, driveshaft or transmission could be damaged.

No Lift-Shift

On ATS-V vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, the vehicle can be shifted up a gear when the accelerator pedal is pressed to the floor without being released. This allows for less power interruption and will improve acceleration times. This feature is available in all vehicle modes and is only active when the engine speed is greater than 2500 rpm.

Active Rev Match

ATS-V vehicles equipped with a manual transmission have Active Rev Match (ARM). ARM aids in smoother shifting by matching the engine speed to the next selected gear. By monitoring shift lever and clutch operation, ARM adjusts engine speed to match a calibrated value based on gear selection. On upshifts and downshifts, engine speed will be increased and decreased to match vehicle road speed and transmission gear position. ARM is maintained while the clutch pedal is pressed, but will deactivate if the shift lever is left in the Neutral position.

The system is activated and deactivated by pressing either of the paddles on the steering wheel. The system must be activated with each new ignition cycle.

A gear indicator in the instrument cluster displays the current gear selected. ARM is also shown in the Performance View of the HUD:

- When ARM is activated, the gear number is amber.
- When ARM is deactivated, the gear number is white.

- If no gear number is displayed while the shift lever is in gear, service is required. ARM will be disabled, and the malfunction indicator lamp will be on. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *125*. The clutch and manual transmission will continue to operate normally.

ARM will also:

- Be active above 14 km/h (9 mph).
- Match engine speed up to 6100 rpm.
- Not operate when the accelerator pedal is applied.
- Be disabled when the coolant temperature is below 0 °C (32 °F).

Drive Systems

All-Wheel Drive

Vehicles with this feature always send engine power to all four wheels. It is fully automatic, and adjusts itself as needed for road conditions.

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

This vehicle has an Antilock Brake System (ABS), an advanced electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid.

When the vehicle begins to drive away, ABS checks itself. A momentary motor or clicking noise may be heard while this test is going on, and it may even be noticed that the brake pedal moves a little. This is normal.

If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ *128*.

If driving safely on a wet road and it becomes necessary to slam on the brakes and continue braking to avoid a sudden obstacle, a computer senses the wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each wheel.

ABS can change the brake pressure to each wheel, as required, faster than any driver could. This can help you steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As the brakes are applied, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even with ABS.

Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let ABS work. You may hear the ABS pump or motor operating and feel the brake pedal pulsate. This is normal.

Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows you to steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

Parking Brake (Electric)

Automatic Transmission

Manual Transmission

If equipped with an Electric Parking Brake (EPB), the switch is on the center console for manual transmission vehicles, or on the left side of the instrument panel for automatic transmission vehicles. The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. To prevent draining the battery, avoid repeated cycles of the EPB when the engine is not running.

The system has a (P) or PARK Electric Parking Brake light, and a (P) Service Parking Brake light.

See *Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *128* and *Service Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *128*. There are also parking brake-related Driver Information Center (DIC) messages.

Before leaving the vehicle, check for the Ⓟ or PARK light to ensure that the parking brake is applied.

EPB Apply

To apply the EPB:

1. Be sure the vehicle is at a complete stop.
2. Lift up the EPB switch momentarily.

The Ⓟ or PARK light will flash and then stay on once the EPB is fully applied. If the Ⓟ or PARK light flashes continuously, then the EPB is only partially applied or there is a problem with the EPB. A DIC message will display. Release the EPB and try to apply it again. If the light does not come on, or keeps flashing, have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if the Ⓟ or PARK light is flashing. See your dealer. See *Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *128*.

If the Ⓟ light is on, press the EPB switch and hold it. Continue to hold the switch until the Ⓟ or PARK light remains on. If the Ⓟ light remains on, see your dealer.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is moving, the vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is pressed. If the switch is pressed until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

The vehicle may automatically apply the EPB in some situations when the vehicle is not moving. This is normal, and is done to periodically check the correct operation of the EPB system.

If the EPB fails to apply, block the rear wheels to prevent vehicle movement.

EPB Release

To release the EPB:

1. Turn the ignition on or to ACC/ACCESSORY.
2. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the EPB switch momentarily.

The EPB is released when the Ⓟ or PARK light is off.

If the Ⓟ light is on, release the EPB by pressing and holding the EPB switch. Continue to hold the switch until the Ⓟ or PARK light is off. If either light stays on after release is attempted, see your dealer.

Caution

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

Automatic EPB Release

The EPB will automatically release if the vehicle is running, placed into gear, and an attempt is made to drive

away. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

The EPB can also be used to prevent roll back for vehicles with a manual transmission taking off on a hill. When no roll back is desired, an applied EPB will allow both feet to be used for the clutch and accelerator pedals in preparation for starting the vehicle moving in the intended direction. In this case, there is no need to press the switch to release the EPB.

Parking Brake (Manual)

To set the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down, then push the parking brake pedal down.

If the ignition is on, the brake system warning light will come on. See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *127*.

Caution

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

To release the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down, then push down momentarily on the parking brake pedal until you feel the pedal release. Slowly pull your foot up off the parking brake pedal. If the parking brake is not released when you begin to drive, the brake system warning light will be on and a chime will sound warning you that the parking brake is still on.

If you are towing a trailer and are parking on a hill, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *244*.

Brake Assist

This vehicle has a brake assist feature designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions. This feature uses the stability system hydraulic brake control module to supplement the power brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle. The stability system hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsation or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates. The brake assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

This vehicle has a Hill Start Assist (HSA) feature, which may be useful when the vehicle is stopped on a grade sufficient enough to activate HSA. This feature is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling, either forward or rearward, during vehicle drive off. After the driver completely stops and holds the vehicle in a complete standstill on a grade, HSA will be automatically activated. During the transition period between when the driver releases the brake pedal and starts to accelerate to drive off on a grade, HSA holds the braking pressure for a maximum of two seconds to ensure that there is no rolling. The brakes will automatically release when the accelerator pedal is applied within the two-second window. It will not activate if the vehicle is in a drive gear and facing downhill, or if the vehicle is facing uphill and in R (Reverse).

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control

System Operation

The vehicle has a Traction Control System (TCS) and StabiliTrak, an electronic stability control system. These systems help limit wheel spin and assist the driver in maintaining control, especially on slippery road conditions.

TCS activates if it senses that any of the drive wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, TCS applies the brakes to the spinning wheels and reduces engine power to limit wheel spin.

StabiliTrak activates when the vehicle senses a difference between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually traveling. StabiliTrak selectively applies braking pressure to any one of the vehicle wheel brakes to assist the driver in keeping the vehicle on the intended path.

If cruise control is being used and TCS or StabiliTrak begins to limit wheel spin, cruise control will disengage. Cruise control may be turned back on when road conditions allow.

Both systems come on automatically when the vehicle is started and begins to move. The systems may be heard or felt while they are operating or while performing diagnostic checks. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle.

It is recommended to leave both systems on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn TCS off if the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck* ⇨ *186* and “Turning the Systems Off and On” later in this section.

The indicator light for both systems is in the instrument cluster. This light will:

- Flash when TCS is limiting wheel spin.
- Flash when StabiliTrak is activated.
- Turn on and stay on when either system is not working.

If either system fails to turn on or to activate, a message may display in the Driver Information Center (DIC), and comes on and stays on to indicate that the system is inactive and is not assisting the driver in maintaining control. The vehicle is safe to drive, but driving should be adjusted accordingly.

If comes on and stays on:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 seconds.
3. Start the engine.
4. Drive the vehicle.

If comes on and stays on, the vehicle may need more time to diagnose the problem. If the condition persists, see your dealer.

Turning the Systems Off and On

The button for TCS and StabiliTrak is on the center console (ATS) or the steering wheel (ATS-V).

Caution

Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when TCS is off. The vehicle driveline could be damaged.

To turn off only TCS, press and release . The Traction Off light displays in the instrument cluster and a DIC message may display.

To turn TCS on again, press and release . The Traction Off light displayed in the instrument cluster will turn off.

If TCS is limiting wheel spin when is pressed, the system will not turn off until the wheels stop spinning.

To turn off both TCS and StabiliTrak, press and hold until the Traction Off light and StabiliTrak OFF light come on and stay on in the instrument cluster. A DIC message may display.

To turn TCS and StabiliTrak on again, press and release . The Traction Off light and StabiliTrak OFF light in the instrument cluster turn off.

Adding accessories can affect the vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *252*.

Driver Mode Control

Driver Mode Control attempts to add a sportier feel, provide a more comfortable ride, or assist in different weather conditions or terrain. This system simultaneously changes the software settings of various sub-systems. Depending on the option package, available features, and mode selected, the suspension, steering, and

powertrain will change settings to achieve the desired mode characteristics. If the vehicle is equipped with Magnetic Ride Control, selecting the various Driver Modes adjusts the ride of the vehicle to enhance the ride performance for the road conditions and the selected mode.

The Driver Mode Control has three or four modes: Tour, Sport, Snow/Ice, and Track (V-Series Only). Snow/Ice mode is only available on automatic transmission vehicles. Press and release the MODE button (ATS) or press the ∧ or ∨ button (ATS-V) on the center console to activate the mode menu in the cluster. The first press of the button will show the current mode. Subsequent presses will scroll though the available modes. The Tour and Sport modes will feel similar on a smooth road. Select a new setting whenever driving conditions change.

Tour Mode

Use for normal city and highway driving to provide a smooth, soft ride.

Sport Mode

Use where road conditions or personal preference demand a more controlled response.

When selected, the Sport mode indicator will display in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

When in Sport or Track mode, the vehicle will shift automatically but may hold a lower gear longer than it would in the normal driving mode based on braking, throttle input, and vehicle lateral acceleration. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *199*. The steering will change to provide more precise control. If the vehicle has Magnetic Ride Control, the suspension will change to provide better cornering performance.

Competitive Driving Mode can be accessed through this mode.

Snow/Ice Mode

Use when more traction is needed during slippery conditions.

Snow/Ice mode will use a different accelerator pedal map to optimize traction on a slippery surface. The accelerator pedal will reduce engine torque at small pedal inputs. The transmission will also shift differently to assist in maintaining traction.

When selected, the Snow/Ice mode indicator will display in the DIC.

This feature is not intended for use when the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice, snow, or gravel. If the vehicle becomes stuck, see *If the Vehicle Is Stuck* ⇨ *186*.

Track Mode (V-Series Only)

Use when maximum vehicle handling is desired. When selected, the Track mode indicator will display in the DIC.

The accelerator pedal is adjusted to give maximum control during the highest level of spirited driving.

The automatic transmission and steering will function similar to Sport Mode.

The Magnetic Ride Control will be set to the optimum level for vehicle responsiveness.

Competitive Driving Mode can be accessed through this mode.

Use when driving on a closed race course or drag strip.

Vehicle systems are optimized for maximum track performance.

This mode allows entry to Performance Traction Management (PTM) in the Competitive Driving Mode.

Modes:	TOUR *Default*	SPORT	SNOW/ICE	TRACK
Throttle Progression	Tour	Tour	Snow/Ice	Track
Transmission Shift Mode	Tour	Sport	Tour	Track
Steering (Assist Effort)	Tour	Sport	Tour	Track
Magnetic Ride Control (if equipped)	Tour	Sport	Tour	Track
Launch Control (V-Series Only)	NA	NA	NA	Available
Stability Control	Tour	Tour	Tour	Track
Performance Traction Management (if equipped) (V-Series Only)	NA	NA	NA	Available
Engine Sound Management	NA	NA	NA	Available

Driver Mode Selector Attributes Affected

The Gauge Cluster Display is configured for each mode when linked (default):

Throttle Progression

Adjusts throttle sensitivity by selecting how quick or slow the throttle reacts to input.

- Snow/Ice - The accelerator pedal will reduce engine torque at small pedal inputs. This allows better wheel control on slippery surfaces.
- Track - The accelerator pedal is adjusted to give maximum control during the highest level of spirited driving.

Transmission Shift Mode

Sport or Track – Performance Mode Lift Foot (PMLF) allows the transmission to hold the current gear after a quick release of a heavily applied accelerator pedal. This provides greater engine braking and enhanced vehicle control without using the paddles. Performance Algorithm Shift (PAS) recognizes aggressive cornering, heavy braking, and high acceleration to select and

hold lower gears when not using paddles. The shifts are also firmer to increase the quickness of shifting.

Steering (Assist Effort)

Adjusts from a lighter steering feel in Tour mode to reduced assist in Sport and Track mode for more steering feel.

Magnetic Ride Control (If equipped)

Adjusts the shock dampening firmness from a comfort tune in Tour mode to an optimized responsiveness tune in Sport and Track.

Launch Control (V-Series Only)

Available only in Track mode for maximum "off–the–line" acceleration when in Competitive Driving Mode or PTM.

Stability Control

- Competitive Driving Mode allows less computer control to permit some slide and drift and is selected with the button – only available in Track mode.
- StabiliTrak can be turned off by pressing and holding the button for five seconds.

PTM (Performance Traction Management) (If equipped) (V-Series Only)

- Available in Track mode.
- There are five selectable settings.

Driver Mode Customization

The Engine Sound Management, steering, and suspension drive modes can be set to the driver's preference. See "Driving Mode" under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

When in the Track main vehicle mode, you cannot overwrite the Steering or Suspension settings. These settings are designed to interact with the advanced functions in the Track Mode and cannot be overwritten.

The selections made in the Driving Mode menu overwrite the main vehicle mode selection via the buttons or switch on the center console. In order to customize and overwrite, select one of the three settings by touching the infotainment display.

When in the customization screen for each system, select one of four options:

- Auto (Follows the mode switch)
- Tour
- Sport
- Track

The default will be to follow the vehicle mode switch settings, but the main vehicle mode selection for the currently selected system can be overwritten using this menu. The settings selected in this menu will set the vehicle behavior in all selected vehicle modes, and will be retained over each ignition cycle. They do not have to be reset each time the vehicle is started.

Competitive Driving Mode (FE3 Only)

To select this optional handling mode, press quickly two times and the DIC will display the appropriate message. While in the Competitive Driving Mode, the traction off light

and StabiliTrak OFF light will come on in the instrument cluster. TCS does not limit wheel spin, the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential (eLSD) allows increased vehicle agility, and more effort is required to turn the steering wheel. See “Limited-Slip Axle (V-Series Only)” later in this section. Adjust your driving accordingly.

Press again, or turn the ignition to ACC/ACCESSORY and restart the vehicle, to turn TCS back on. The traction off light and StabiliTrak OFF light will go out in the instrument cluster.

Caution

When traction control is turned off, or Competitive Driving Mode is active, it is possible to lose traction.

Performance Traction Management (V-Series Only)

Performance Traction Management (PTM) integrates the Traction Control, StabiliTrak, and Magnetic Ride Control systems to provide improved and consistent performance when cornering. The amount of available engine power is based on the mode selected, track conditions, driver skill, and the radius of each corner.

This light is on when the vehicle is in the PTM mode.

To select this optional handling mode, the vehicle mode must be Track. Then quickly press the on the steering wheel two times. PERF TRAC 1 - WET ACTIVE HANDLING ON displays in the DIC.

When PTM is active, the up and down buttons will no longer change Drive Modes, but instead change PTM modes.

To select a mode while in PTM, press the Driver Mode Control/PTM buttons on the center console.

To experience the performance benefit of this system, after entering a curve and at the point where normal acceleration occurs, fully push the accelerator pedal. The PTM system will modify the level of engine power for a smooth and consistent corner exit.

The PTM system contains five modes. These modes are selected by pressing the Driver Mode Control/PTM buttons on the center console. Scroll up or down through modes 1-5 by pressing the MODE up and down button. The following is a DIC display description and the recommended usage of each mode:

PERF TRAC 1 – WET ACTIVE HANDLING ON

- Intended for all driver skill levels.
- Wet or damp conditions only — not intended for use in heavy rain or standing water.
- StabiliTrak is on.

PERF TRAC 2 – DRY ACTIVE HANDLING ON

- For use by less experienced drivers or while learning a new track.
- Dry conditions only.
- StabiliTrak is on.

PERF TRAC 3 – SPORT ACTIVE HANDLING ON

- For use by drivers who are familiar with the track.
- Dry conditions only.
- Requires more driving skill than mode 2.
- StabiliTrak is on.

PERF TRAC 4 – SPORT ACTIVE HANDLING OFF

- For use by drivers who are familiar with the track.
- Dry conditions only.
- Requires more driving skill than modes 2 or 3.
- StabiliTrak is off.

PERF TRAC 5 – RACE ACTIVE HANDLING OFF

- For use by experienced drivers who are familiar with the track.
- Dry conditions only.
- Requires more driving skill than in other modes.
- StabiliTrak is off.

Press and release to turn off PTM and return to the traction control and StabiliTrak systems. The traction off light and StabiliTrak OFF light will go out.

Launch Control (V-Series Only)

A Launch Control feature is available, within Competitive Driving Mode (V-Series) or Performance Traction Management (V-Series), to allow the driver to achieve high levels of vehicle acceleration in a straight line. Launch Control is a form of traction control that manages tire spin while launching the vehicle. This feature is intended for use during closed course race events where consistent zero to 60 and quarter mile times are desirable.

Launch Control is only available when the following criteria are met:

- Competitive Driving Mode is selected (V-Series) or any of the Performance Traction Management modes are selected (V-Series). The TCS light comes on in the instrument cluster and the appropriate DIC message displays.
- The vehicle is not moving.
- The steering wheel is pointing straight.

Manual Transmissions

- The clutch is pressed and the vehicle is in 1 (First) gear.
- The accelerator pedal is rapidly applied to wide open throttle.

The Launch Control feature will initially limit engine speed as the driver rapidly applies the accelerator pedal to wide open throttle. Allow the engine rpm to stabilize. A smooth, quick release of the clutch, while

maintaining the fully pressed accelerator pedal, will manage wheel slip. Complete shifts as described in *Manual Transmission* ⇨ *203*.

Automatic Transmissions

- The brake pedal must be firmly pressed to the floor, equivalent to a panic brake event.
- The accelerator pedal is rapidly applied to wide open throttle. (If the vehicle rolls due to wide open throttle, release the throttle, press the brake pedal more firmly, and re-apply the accelerator to wide open throttle.)

The Launch Control feature will initially limit engine speed as the driver rapidly applies the accelerator pedal to wide open throttle. Allow the engine rpm to stabilize. A smooth, quick release of the brake pedal, while maintaining the fully pressed accelerator pedal, will manage wheel slip.

After the vehicle is launched, the system continues in Performance Traction Management (V-Series).

Competitive Driving Mode, PTM, and Launch Control are systems designed for a closed course race track and not intended for use on public roads. The systems are not intended to compensate for lack of driver experience or familiarity with the race track.

Limited-Slip Rear Axle (Except V-Series)

If equipped, the mechanical limited-slip differential can give more traction on snow, mud, ice, sand, or gravel. It works like a standard axle most of the time, but when traction is low, this feature allows the drive wheel with the most traction to move the vehicle. For vehicles with limited-slip differential, driven under severe conditions, the rear axle fluid should be changed.
See *Competitive Driving Mode (FE3 Only)* ⇨ *214* and *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *336*.

Limited-Slip Rear Axle (V-Series Only)

If equipped, the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential (eLSD) is automatically activated. eLSD actively monitors vehicle sensors and driver inputs to determine the amount of change for the conditions. With eLSD, the vehicle has:

- Enhanced high-speed control.
- Improved traction through corners, allowing more acceleration.
- More precise steering.
- Increased vehicle agility.
- Integration with StabiliTrak.

For vehicles with eLSD, driven under severe conditions, the rear axle fluid should be changed.
See *Competitive Driving Mode (FE3 Only)* ⇨ *214* and *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *336*.

Cruise Control

With cruise control, a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more can be maintained without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 40 km/h (25 mph).

⚠ Warning

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. Do not use cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

If equipped with a manual transmission and 2.0L L4 engine (LTG), the cruise control will remain active when the gears are shifted. The cruise is deactivated if the clutch is pressed for several seconds. In an ATS-V Series vehicle, cruise control is canceled immediately with the activation of the clutch pedal.

If the StabiliTrak system begins to limit wheel spin while using cruise control, the cruise control automatically disengages. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *209*. If a collision alert occurs when cruise control is activated, cruise control is disengaged. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *232*. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, cruise control can be turned back on.

Turning off the TCS or StabiliTrak system will disengage the cruise control.

If the brakes are applied, cruise control disengages.

: Press to turn the system on and off. A white cruise control indicator appears in the instrument cluster when cruise is turned on.

+RES : If there is a set speed in memory, press the control up briefly to resume that speed or hold to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed. To increase speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press +RES up to the first detent. To increase speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press +RES up to the second detent.

SET– : Press the control down briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease vehicle speed. To decrease speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press SET– down to the first detent. To decrease speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press SET– down to the second detent.

: Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Setting Cruise Control

If is on when not in use, SET– or +RES could get bumped and go into cruise when not desired. Keep off when cruise is not being used.

1. Press .
2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Press and release SET–.
4. Remove your foot from the accelerator.

When the cruise control has been set to the desired speed, the cruise control indicator appears green on the instrument cluster and a cruise set speed message appears on the Head-Up Display (HUD), if equipped.

Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied or is pressed, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle speed reaches about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, briefly press +RES up to the first detent. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

Increasing Speed While Cruise Control is at a Set Speed

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press and hold +RES up until the desired speed is reached, then release it.
- To increase vehicle speed in small increments, briefly press +RES up to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) faster.
- To increase vehicle speed in larger increments, briefly press +RES up to the second detent. For each press, the vehicle speed increases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *118*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

Reducing Speed While Cruise Control is at a Set Speed

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press and hold SET– down until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in small increments, briefly press SET– down to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) slower.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in larger increments, briefly press SET– down to the second detent.

For each press, the vehicle speed decreases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

The cruise control system may automatically brake to slow the vehicle down (ATS model only).

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *118*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the previously set cruise speed. While pressing the accelerator pedal or shortly following the release to override cruise control, briefly applying the SET– control will result in cruise control set to the current vehicle speed.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well cruise control will work on hills depends upon the vehicle speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle speed. When going downhill, the cruise control system may automatically brake (ATS only), and the transmission may downshift to a lower gear, to slow the vehicle down. Also, you may have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep the vehicle speed down. If the brake pedal is applied, cruise control will disengage.

Ending Cruise Control

There are five ways to end cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal (manual and automatic transmissions).
- Press the clutch pedal for several seconds or shift to Neutral (manual transmissions).
- Shift the transmission to N (Neutral).
- Press .
- Press .

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory if is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

Adaptive Cruise Control

If equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it allows for selecting the cruise control set speed and following gap. Read this entire section before using this system. ACC uses a camera and radar sensors to detect other vehicles. See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *364*. The following gap is the following time (or distance) between your vehicle and a vehicle detected directly ahead in your path, moving in the same direction. If no vehicle is detected in your path, ACC works like regular cruise control.

If a vehicle is detected in your path, ACC can speed up the vehicle or apply limited, moderate braking to maintain the selected following gap. To disengage ACC, apply the brake. If the Traction Control System (TCS) or StabiliTrak® electronic stability control system activates while ACC is

engaged, ACC may automatically disengage. See *Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *209*. When road conditions allow ACC to be safely used, ACC can be turned back on. ACC will not engage if the TCS or StabiliTrak electronic stability control system is disabled.

⚠ Warning

ACC has limited braking ability and may not have time to slow the vehicle down enough to avoid a collision with another vehicle you are following. This can occur when vehicles suddenly slow or stop ahead, or enter your lane. Also see "Alerting the Driver" in this section. Complete attention is always required while driving and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *176*.

⚠ Warning

ACC will not detect or brake for children, pedestrians, animals, or other objects.

Do not use ACC when:

- On winding and hilly roads or when the sensors are blocked by snow, ice, or dirt. The system may not detect a vehicle ahead. Keep the entire front of the vehicle clean.
- Visibility is low, such as in fog, rain, or snow conditions. ACC performance is limited under these conditions.
- On slippery roads where fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip.

: Press to turn the system on or off. The indicator turns white on the instrument cluster when ACC is turned on.

+RES : Press the control up briefly to resume the previous set speed or to increase vehicle speed if ACC is already engaged. To increase speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press +RES up to the first detent. To increase speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press +RES up to the second detent.

SET– : Press the control down briefly to set the speed and activate ACC or to decrease vehicle speed if ACC is already engaged. To decrease speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press SET– down to the first detent. To decrease speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press SET– down to the second detent.

: Press to disengage ACC without erasing the set speed from memory.

: Press to select a following gap time (or distance) setting for ACC of Far, Medium, or Near.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *118*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

Switching Between ACC and Regular Cruise Control

To switch between ACC and regular cruise control, press and hold .
A Driver Information Display (DIC) message displays. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *140*.

ACC Indicator

Regular Cruise Control Indicator

When ACC is engaged, a green indicator will be lit on the instrument cluster. When the regular cruise control is engaged, a green indicator will be lit on the instrument cluster.

When the vehicle is turned on, the cruise control mode will be set to the last mode used before the vehicle was turned off.

⚠ Warning

Always check the cruise control indicator on the instrument cluster to determine which mode cruise control is in before using the feature. If ACC is not active, the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

vehicle will not automatically brake for other vehicles, which could cause an accident if the brakes are not applied manually. You and others could be seriously injured or killed.

Setting Adaptive Cruise Control

If is on when not in use, it could get pressed and go into ACC when not desired. Keep off when cruise is not being used.

Select the set speed desired for ACC. This is the vehicle speed when no vehicle is detected in its path.

ACC will not set at a speed less than 25 km/h (16 mph), although it can be resumed when driving at lower speeds.

To set ACC:

1. Press .
2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Press and release SET–.

4. Remove your foot from the accelerator.

After ACC is set, it may immediately apply the brakes if a vehicle ahead is detected closer than the selected following gap.

The ACC indicator displays in the instrument cluster and Head-Up Display (HUD). When the ACC is active, the indicator will be lit green.

Be mindful of speed limits, surrounding traffic speeds, and weather conditions when selecting the set speed.

Resuming a Set Speed

If the ACC is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, the ACC is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

To begin using ACC again, press +RES up briefly. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

Increasing Speed While ACC is at a Set Speed

Do one of the following:

- Use the accelerator to get to the higher speed. Press SET– down. Release the control and the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will now cruise at the higher speed.

  When the accelerator pedal is pressed, ACC will not brake because it is overridden. The ACC indicator will turn blue on the instrument cluster and the Head-Up Display (HUD). See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *140*.
- Press and hold +RES up until the desired set speed appears on the display, then release it.
- To increase vehicle speed in small increments, press +RES up to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes 1 km/h (1 mph) faster.
- To increase vehicle speed in larger increments, press +RES up to the second detent. For each press, the vehicle speed increases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

When it is determined that there is no vehicle ahead inside the selected following gap, then the vehicle speed will increase to the set speed.

Reducing Speed While ACC is at a Set Speed

Do one of the following:

- Use the brake to get to the desired lower speed. Press SET– down and release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will now cruise at the lower speed.
- Press and hold SET– down until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in small increments, press SET– down to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) slower.

- To decrease the vehicle speed in larger increments, press SET– down to the second detent. For each press, the vehicle speed decreases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

Selecting the Follow Distance

When a slower moving vehicle is detected ahead within the selected following gap, ACC will adjust the vehicle's speed and attempt to maintain the follow distance gap selected.

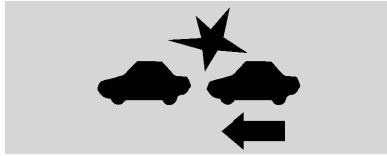
Press on the steering wheel to adjust the following gap. Each press cycles the gap button through three settings: Far, Medium, or Near.

When pressed, the current gap setting displays briefly on the instrument cluster and HUD. The gap setting will be maintained until it is changed.

Since each gap setting corresponds to a following time (Far, Medium, or Near), the following distance will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further back your vehicle will follow a vehicle detected ahead. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the following gap. The range of selectable gaps may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

Changing the gap setting automatically changes the alert timing sensitivity (Far, Medium, or Near) for the Forward Collision Alert (FCA) feature. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ➪ *232*.

Alerting the Driver



If ACC is engaged, driver action may be required when ACC cannot apply sufficient braking because of approaching a vehicle too rapidly.

When this condition occurs, the collision alert symbol on the HUD will flash on the windshield. Either eight beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. See “Collision/ Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ➪ *141*.

See *Defensive Driving* ➪ *176*.

Approaching and Following a Vehicle

The vehicle ahead indicator is in the instrument cluster and HUD display.

The vehicle ahead indicator only displays when a vehicle is detected in your vehicle’s path moving in the same direction.

If this indicator is not displaying, ACC will not respond to or brake to vehicles ahead.

ACC automatically slows the vehicle down and adjusts vehicle speed to follow the vehicle in front at the selected follow gap. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the

vehicle in front of you, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking, if necessary. When braking is active, the brake lamps will come on. The automatic braking may feel or sound different than if the brakes were applied manually. This is normal.

Stationary or Very Slow-Moving Objects

⚠ Warning

ACC may not detect and react to stopped or slow-moving vehicles ahead of you. For example, the system may not brake for a vehicle it has never detected moving. This can occur in stop-and-go traffic or when a vehicle suddenly appears due to a vehicle ahead changing lanes. Your vehicle may not stop and could cause a crash. Use caution when using ACC. Your complete attention is always required while driving and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

ACC Automatically Disengages

ACC may automatically disengage and the driver will need to manually apply the brakes to slow the vehicle if:

- The sensors are blocked.
- The Traction Control System (TCS) or StabiliTrak system has activated or been disabled.
- There is a fault in the system.
- The radar falsely reports a blockage when driving in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles or roadside objects. A DIC message may display to indicate that ACC is temporarily unavailable.

The ACC active symbol will turn white when ACC is no longer active.

Notification to Resume ACC

ACC will maintain a follow gap behind a detected vehicle and slow your vehicle to a stop behind that vehicle.

If the stopped vehicle ahead has driven away and ACC has not resumed, the vehicle ahead indicator will flash as a reminder to check traffic before proceeding. In addition, the left and right sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse three times, or three beeps will sound. See “Switching Between ACC and Regular Cruise Control” previously in this section. See “Alert Type” and “Go Notifier” in “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

When the vehicle ahead drives away, press +RES or the accelerator pedal to resume ACC. If stopped for more than two minutes or if the driver door is opened and the driver seat belt is unbuckled, the ACC automatically applies the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle. The EPB status light will turn on.
See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *206* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *208*. To resume ACC and release the EPB, press the accelerator pedal. ACC can be resumed when the vehicle is traveling greater than 5 km/h (3 mph).

A DIC warning message may display indicating to shift to P (Park) before exiting the vehicle. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *140*.

⚠ Warning

If ACC has stopped the vehicle, and if ACC is disengaged, turned off, or canceled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop. The vehicle can move. When ACC is holding the vehicle at a stop, always be prepared to manually apply the brakes.

⚠ Warning

Leaving the vehicle without placing it in P (Park) can be dangerous. Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by ACC. Always place the vehicle in P (Park) and turn off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

ACC Override

If using the accelerator pedal while ACC is active, the ACC indicator turns blue on the instrument cluster and in the HUD (if equipped) to indicate that automatic braking will not occur. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *140*. ACC will resume operation when the accelerator pedal is not being pressed.

⚠ Warning

The ACC will not automatically apply the brakes if your foot is resting on the accelerator pedal. You could crash into a vehicle ahead of you.

Curves in the Road

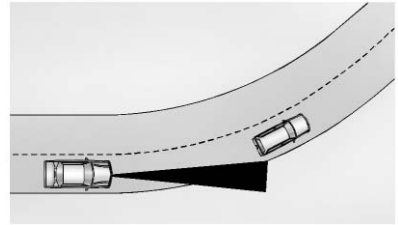
⚠ Warning

On curves, ACC may not detect a vehicle ahead in your lane. You could be startled if the vehicle accelerates up to the set speed, especially when following a vehicle exiting or entering exit ramps. You could lose control of the vehicle or crash. Do not use ACC while driving on an entrance or exit ramp. Always be ready to use the brakes if necessary.

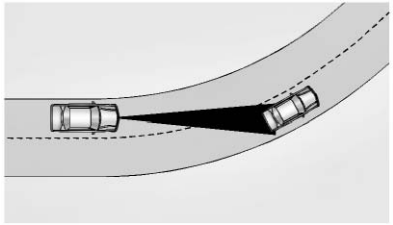
⚠ Warning

On curves, ACC may respond to a vehicle in another lane, or may not have time to react to a vehicle in your lane. You could crash into a vehicle ahead of you, or lose control of your vehicle. Give extra attention in curves and be ready to use the brakes if necessary. Select an appropriate speed while driving in curves.

ACC may operate differently in a sharp curve. It may reduce the vehicle speed if the curve is too sharp.



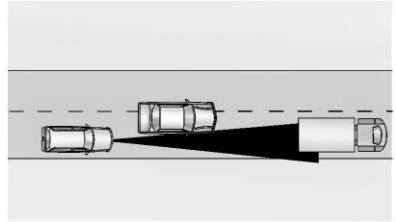
When following a vehicle and entering a curve, ACC may not detect the vehicle ahead and accelerate to the set speed. When this happens the vehicle ahead indicator will not appear.



ACC may detect a vehicle that is not in your lane and apply the brakes.

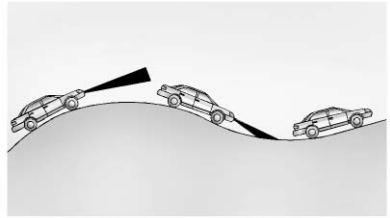
ACC may occasionally provide an alert and/or braking that is considered unnecessary. It could respond to vehicles in different lanes, signs, guardrails, and other stationary objects when entering or exiting a curve. This is normal operation. The vehicle does not need service.

Other Vehicle Lane Changes



ACC will not detect a vehicle ahead until it is completely in the lane. The brake may need to be manually applied.

Do Not Use ACC on Hills and When Towing a Trailer



Do not use ACC when driving on steep hills or when towing a trailer. ACC will not detect a vehicle in the lane while driving on steep hills. The driver will often need to take over acceleration and braking on steep hills, especially when towing a trailer. If the brakes are applied, the ACC disengages.

Ending ACC

There are three ways to disengage ACC:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press .
- Press .

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory if is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

Cleaning the Sensing System

The camera sensor on the windshield behind the rearview mirror and the radar sensors on the front of the vehicle can become blocked by snow, ice, dirt, or mud. These areas need to be cleaned for ACC to operate properly.

For cleaning instructions, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care* ⇨ *326*.

System operation may also be limited under snow, heavy rain, or road spray conditions.

Driver Assistance Systems

This vehicle may have features that work together to help avoid crashes or reduce crash damage while driving, backing, and parking. Read this entire section before using these systems.

⚠ Warning

Do not rely on the Driver Assistance Systems. These systems do not replace the need for paying attention and driving safely. You may not hear or feel alerts or warnings provided by these systems. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *176*.

Under many conditions, these systems will not:

- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Detect vehicles or objects outside the area monitored by the system.
- Work at all driving speeds.
- Warn you or provide you with enough time to avoid a crash.
- Work under poor visibility or bad weather conditions.
- Work if the detection sensor is not cleaned or is covered by ice, snow, mud, or dirt.
- Work if the detection sensor is covered up, such as with a sticker, magnet, or metal plate.
- Work if the area surrounding the detection sensor is damaged or not properly repaired.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

Audible or Safety Alert Seat

Some driver assistance features alert the driver of obstacles by beeping. To change the volume of the warning chime, see “Comfort and Convenience” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

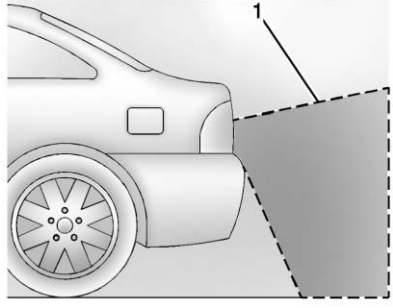
If equipped with the Safety Alert Seat, the driver seat cushion may provide a vibrating pulse alert instead of beeping. To change this, see “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing

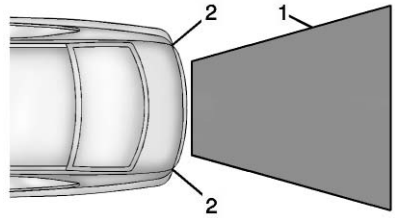
If equipped, the Rear Vision Camera (RVC), Rear Parking Assist (RPA), Front Parking Assist (FPA), Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB) and Backing Warning System, and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) may help the driver park or avoid objects. Always check around the vehicle when parking or backing.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

When the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse), the RVC displays an image of the area behind the vehicle in the infotainment display. The previous screen displays when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse) after a short delay. To return to the previous screen sooner, press any button on the infotainment system, shift into P (Park), or reach a vehicle speed of approximately 12 km/h (8 mph).



1. View Displayed by the Camera



1. View Displayed by the Camera
2. Corners of the Rear Bumper

Displayed images may be farther or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper do not display.

A warning triangle may appear on the infotainment display to show that Rear Parking Assist (RPA) has detected an object. This triangle changes from amber to red and increases in size the closer the object.

⚠ Warning

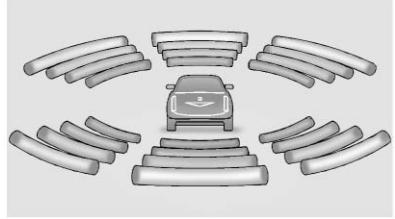
The camera(s) do not display children, pedestrians, bicyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other object outside of the cameras' field of view, below the bumper, or under the vehicle. Shown distances may be different from actual distances. Do not drive or park the vehicle using only these camera(s). Always check behind and around the vehicle before driving. Failure to use proper care may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

Parking Assist

With RPA, and if equipped with FPA, as the vehicle moves at speeds of less than 8 km/h (5 mph) the sensors on the bumpers may detect objects up to 2.5 m (8 ft) behind and 1.2 m (4 ft) in front of the vehicle within a zone 25 cm (10 in) high off the ground and below bumper level. These detection distances may be shorter during warmer or humid weather. Blocked sensors will not detect objects and can also cause false detections. Keep the sensors clean of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush; and clean sensors after a car wash in freezing temperatures.

⚠ Warning

The Parking Assist system does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects located below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. It is not available at speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph). To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with Parking Assist, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before moving forward or backing.



The instrument cluster may have a parking assist display with bars that show "distance to object" and object location information for the Parking Assist system. As the object gets closer, more bars light up and the bars change color from yellow to amber to red.

When an object is first detected in the rear, one beep will be heard from the rear, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse two times. When an object is very close (<0.6 m (2 ft) in the vehicle rear, or <0.3 m (1 ft) in the vehicle front), five beeps will sound from the front or rear depending on object location, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. Beeps for FPA are higher pitched than for RPA.

Backing Warning and Reverse Automatic Braking

Vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) have the Backing Warning and Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB) system. The Backing Warning part of this system can warn of rear objects when backing up at speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The Backing Warning System will beep once from the rear when a potential object threat is first detected, or pulse twice on both sides of the Safety Alert Seat. When the system detects a potential crash, beeps will be heard from the rear, or five pulses will be felt on both sides of the Safety Alert Seat. There may also be a brief, sharp application of the brakes.

⚠ Warning

The Backing Warning System only operates at speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph). It does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

animals, or objects below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. In some situations, such as at higher backing speeds, there may not be enough time for the short, sharp application of the vehicle brake system to occur. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with the Backing Warning System, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before backing.

When the vehicle is in R (Reverse), if the system detects the vehicle is backing too fast to avoid a crash with a detected object behind your vehicle in your path, it may automatically brake hard to a stop to help avoid or reduce the harm caused by a backing crash.

⚠ Warning

RAB may not avoid many types of backing crashes. Do not wait for the automatic braking to apply. This system is not designed to replace driver braking and only works in R (Reverse) when an object is detected directly behind the vehicle. It may not brake or stop in time to avoid a crash. It will not brake for objects when the vehicle is moving at very low speeds. It does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with RAB, always check the area around the vehicle before and while backing.

Pressing the brake pedal after the vehicle comes to a stop will release the Reverse Automatic Braking. If the brake pedal is not pressed soon after the stop, the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) may be set. When it is safe,

press the accelerator pedal firmly at any time to override the Reverse Automatic Braking.

⚠ Warning

There may be instances where unexpected or undesired automatic braking occurs. If this happens, either press the brake pedal or firmly press the accelerator pedal to release the brakes from the RAB system. Before releasing the brakes, check the RVC and check the area around the vehicle to make sure it is safe to proceed.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

If equipped, RCTA displays a red warning triangle with a left or right pointing arrow on the infotainment display to warn of traffic coming from the left or right. This system detects objects coming from up to 20 m (65 ft) from the left or right side of the vehicle. When an object is detected, either three beeps sound from the left or right or three Safety Alert Seat pulses occur on the left or right side, depending on the direction of the detected vehicle.

Use caution while backing up when towing a trailer, as the RCTA detection zones that extend out from the back of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed.

Turning the Features On or Off

The P button to the left of the steering wheel is used to turn on or off the Front and Rear Parking Assist, Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA), Reverse Automatic Braking, and Backing Warning System at the same time. The indicator light next to the button comes on when the features are on and turns off when the features have been disabled.

Turn off parking assist and Reverse Automatic Braking when towing a trailer.

To turn the RPA symbols and rear guidance lines on or off, see *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

RCTA can be turned on or off. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

Assistance Systems for Driving

If equipped, when driving the vehicle in a forward gear, Forward Collision Alert (FCA), Lane Departure Warning (LDW), Lane Keep Assist (LKA), Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA), Lane Change Alert (LCA), and/or Forward Automatic Braking (FAB) can help to avoid a crash or reduce crash damage.

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

If equipped, the FCA system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too quickly, FCA provides a flashing red alert on the windshield and rapidly beeps or pulses the Safety Alert Seat. FCA also lights an amber visual alert if following another vehicle much too closely.

FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m (197 ft) and operates at speeds above 40 km/h (25 mph). If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it can detect vehicles to distances of approximately 110 m (360 ft) and operates at all speeds. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *220*.

⚠ Warning

FCA is a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all. FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *176*.

FCA can be disabled with either the FCA steering wheel control or, if equipped, through vehicle personalization. See "Collision/ Detection Systems" under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

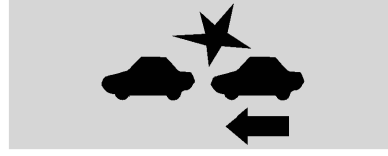
Detecting the Vehicle Ahead

FCA warnings will not occur unless the FCA system detects a vehicle ahead. When a vehicle is detected, the vehicle ahead indicator will display green. Vehicles may not be detected on curves, highway exit ramps, or hills, due to poor visibility; or if a vehicle ahead is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects. FCA will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.

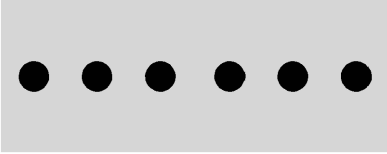
⚠ Warning

FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a vehicle ahead if the FCA sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windshield is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windshield are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windshield, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

Collision Alert



With Head-Up Display



Without Head-Up Display

When your vehicle approaches another detected vehicle too rapidly, the red FCA display will flash on the windshield. Also, eight high-pitched beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. When this Collision Alert occurs, the brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as needed. Cruise control may be disengaged when the Collision Alert occurs.

Tailgating Alert

The vehicle ahead indicator will display amber when you are following a detected vehicle ahead much too closely.

Selecting the Alert Timing

The Collision Alert control is on the steering wheel. Press to set the FCA timing to Far, Medium, Near, or on some vehicles, Off. The first button press shows the current setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed and will affect the timing of both the Collision Alert and the Tailgating Alert features. The timing of both alerts will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timing may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

If equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), changing the FCA timing setting automatically changes the ACC following gap setting (Far, Medium, or Near).

Following Distance Indicator

The following distance to a moving vehicle ahead in your path is indicated in following time in seconds on the

Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *134*. The minimum following time is 0.5 seconds away. If there is no vehicle detected ahead, or the vehicle ahead is out of sensor range, dashes will be displayed.

Unnecessary Alerts

FCA may provide unnecessary alerts for turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, this may correct the issue:

- Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the rearview mirror.
- Clean the entire front of the vehicle.
- Clean the headlamps.

Forward Automatic Braking (FAB)

If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it also has FAB, which includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA). When the system detects a vehicle ahead in your path that is traveling in the same direction that you may be about to crash into, it can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle. This can help avoid or lessen the severity of crashes when driving in a forward gear. Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard. This forward automatic braking can only occur if a vehicle is detected. This is shown by the FCA vehicle ahead indicator being lit. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *232*.

The system works when driving in a forward gear above 4 km/h (2 mph). It can detect vehicles up to approximately 60 m (197 ft).

⚠ Warning

FAB is an emergency crash preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on FAB to brake the vehicle. FAB will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles.

FAB may not:

- Detect a vehicle ahead on winding or hilly roads.
- Detect all vehicles, especially vehicles with a trailer, tractors, muddy vehicles, etc.
- Detect a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.
- Detect a vehicle ahead if it is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

FAB may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to try to avoid a potential crash. If this happens, FAB may engage the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle at a stop. To release automatic braking, release the EPB or firmly press the accelerator pedal.

⚠ Warning

FAB may automatically brake the vehicle suddenly in situations where it is unexpected and undesired. It could respond to a turning vehicle ahead, guardrails, signs, and other non-moving objects. To override FAB, firmly press the accelerator pedal, if it is safe to do so.

Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA)

IBA may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.

Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time is normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed. IBA will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

IBA may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

FAB and IBA can be disabled through vehicle personalization. See “Collision/ Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*.

⚠ Warning

Using FAB or IBA while towing a trailer could cause you to lose control of the vehicle and crash. Turn the system to Off when towing a trailer.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, the SBZA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind zone (or spot) areas. When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left or right side mirror display will light up if a moving vehicle is detected in that blind zone. If the turn signal is activated and a vehicle is also detected on the same side, the display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes. Since this system is part of the Lane Change Alert (LCA) system, read the entire LCA section before using this feature.

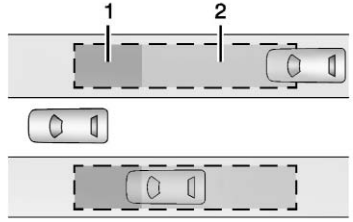
Lane Change Alert (LCA)

If equipped, the LCA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding lane change crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind zone (or spot) areas or with vehicles rapidly approaching these areas from behind. The LCA warning display will light up in the corresponding outside side mirror and will flash if the turn signal is on.

⚠ Warning

LCA does not alert the driver to vehicles outside of the system detection zones, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals. It may not provide alerts when changing lanes under all driving conditions. Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Before making a lane change, always check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

LCA Detection Zones



1. SBZA Detection Zone
2. LCA Detection Zone

The LCA sensor covers a zone of approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, or 3.5 m (11 ft). The height of the zone is approximately between 0.5 m (1.5 ft) and 2 m (6 ft) off the ground. The Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) warning area starts at approximately the middle of the vehicle and goes back 5 m (16 ft). Drivers are also warned of vehicles rapidly approaching from up to 25 m (82 ft) behind the vehicle.

How the System Works

The LCA symbol lights up in the side mirrors when the system detects a moving vehicle in the next lane over that is in the side blind zone or rapidly approaching that zone from behind. A lit LCA symbol indicates it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, check the LCA display, check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

Left Side Mirror Display

Right Side Mirror Display

When the vehicle is started, both outside mirror LCA displays will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating. When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left or right side mirror display will light up if a moving vehicle is detected in the next lane over in that blind zone or rapidly approaching that zone. If the turn

signal is activated in the same direction as a detected vehicle, this display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes.

LCA can be disabled through vehicle personalization. See “Collision/ Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *141*. If LCA is disabled by the driver, the LCA mirror displays will not light up.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The LCA system requires some driving for the system to calibrate to maximum performance. This calibration may occur more quickly if the vehicle is driven on a straight highway road with traffic and roadside objects (e.g., guardrails, barriers). During a trip, the LCA system is not operational until the vehicle first reaches a speed of 24 km/h (15 mph).

LCA displays may not come on when passing a vehicle quickly, for a stopped vehicle, or when towing a trailer. The LCA detection zones that extend back from the side of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed. Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer. LCA may alert to objects attached to the vehicle, such as a trailer, bicycle, or object extending out to either side of the vehicle. Attached objects may also interfere with the detection of vehicles. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

LCA may not always alert the driver to vehicles in the next lane over, especially in wet conditions or when driving on sharp curves. The system does not need to be serviced. The system may light up due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other non-moving objects. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

LCA may not operate when the LCA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms. For cleaning instructions, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care* ⇨ *326*. If the DIC still displays the system unavailable message after cleaning both sides of the vehicle toward the rear corners of the vehicle, see your dealer.

If the LCA displays do not light up when moving vehicles are in the side blind zone or rapidly approaching this zone and the system is clean, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

When LCA is disabled for any reason other than the driver turning it off, the Lane Change Alert On option will not be available on the personalization menu.

Radio Frequency Information

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *364*.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

If equipped, LDW may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. It may provide a warning if the vehicle is crossing a detected lane marking without using a turn signal in the lane departure direction. Since this system is part of the Lane

Keep Assist (LKA) system, read the entire LKA section before using this feature.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA)

If equipped, LKA may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. It may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using a turn signal in that direction. It may also provide a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) system alert as the lane marking is crossed. The LKA system will not assist or provide an LDW alert if it detects that you are actively steering. Override LKA by turning the steering wheel. LKA uses a camera to detect lane markings between 60 km/h (37 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph).

⚠ Warning

The LKA system does not continuously steer the vehicle. It may not keep the vehicle in the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

lane or give a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The LKA and LDW systems may not:

- Provide an alert or enough steering assist to avoid a lane departure or crash.
- Detect lane markings under poor weather or visibility conditions. This can occur if the windshield or headlamps are blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, if they are not in proper condition, or if the sun shines directly into the camera.
- Detect road edges.
- Detect lanes on winding or hilly roads.

If LKA only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only assist or provide an LDW alert

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

when approaching the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marking. Even with LKA and LDW, you must steer the vehicle. Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Always keep the windshield, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair. Do not use LKA in bad weather conditions.

⚠ Warning

Using LKA while towing a trailer or on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Turn the system off.

How the System Works

The LKA camera sensor is on the windshield ahead of the rearview mirror.

To turn LKA on and off, press to the left of the steering wheel.

When on, is green if LKA is available to assist and provide LDW alerts. It may assist by gently turning the steering wheel and display as amber if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using a turn signal in that direction. It may also provide an LDW alert by flashing amber as the lane marking is crossed. Additionally, there may be three beeps, or the driver seat may pulse three times, on the right or left, depending on the lane departure direction.

Take Steering

The LKA system does not continuously steer the vehicle. If LKA does not detect active driver steering, an alert, chime, or DIC message may be provided. Steer the vehicle to dismiss.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The system performance may be affected by:

- Close vehicles ahead.
- Sudden lighting changes, such as when driving through tunnels.
- Banked roads.
- Roads with poor lane markings, such as two-lane roads.

If the LKA system is not functioning properly when lane markings are clearly visible, cleaning the windshield may help.

LKA assistance and/or LDW alerts may occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service. Turn LKA off if these conditions continue.

Fuel

GM recommends the use of TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline to keep the engine cleaner and reduce engine deposits. See www.toptiergas.com for a list of TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline marketers and applicable countries.

TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline

CATEGORIE SUPERIEURE Essences Détergentes

Do not use any fuel labeled E85 or FlexFuel. Do not use gasoline with ethanol levels greater than 15% by volume.

For the 2.0L L4 turbo engine (LTG), premium unleaded gasoline meeting ASTM specification D4814 with a posted octane rating of 93 is highly

recommended for best performance and fuel economy. Unleaded gasoline with an octane rated as low as 87 can be used. Using unleaded gasoline rated below 93 octane, however, will lead to reduced acceleration and fuel economy. If knocking occurs, use a gasoline rated at 93 octane as soon as possible, otherwise, the engine could be damaged. If heavy knocking is heard when using gasoline with a 93 octane rating, the engine needs service.

For the 3.6L V6 engine (LGX), use regular unleaded gasoline meeting ASTM specification D4814 with a posted octane rating of 87 or higher. Do not use gasoline with a posted octane rating of less than 87, as this may cause engine knock and will lower fuel economy.

For the 3.6L twin turbo V6 engine (LF4), use premium unleaded gasoline meeting ASTM specification D4814 with a posted octane rating of 93. If unavailable, unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 91 may be used, but with reduced performance and fuel economy. If the octane is less than 91, the engine could be damaged and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If heavy knocking is heard when using gasoline rated at 93 octane, the engine needs service.

Prohibited Fuels

Caution

Do not use fuels with any of the following conditions; doing so may damage the vehicle and void its warranty:

- For vehicles which are not FlexFuel, fuel labeled greater than 15% ethanol by volume, such as mid-level ethanol blends (16 – 50% ethanol), E85, or FlexFuel.
- Fuel with any amount of methanol, methylal, and aniline. These fuels can corrode metal fuel system parts or damage plastic and rubber parts.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Fuel containing metals such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT), which can damage the emissions control system and spark plugs.
- Fuel with a posted octane rating of less than the recommended fuel. Using this fuel will lower fuel economy and performance, and may decrease the life of the emissions catalyst.

California Fuel Requirements

If the vehicle is certified to meet California Emissions Standards, it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. See the underhood emission control label. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California Emissions Standards, the vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal

specifications, but emission control system performance may be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp could turn on and the vehicle may not pass a smog-check test. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *125*. If this occurs, return to your authorized dealer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs may not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Fuels in Foreign Countries

The U.S., Canada, and Mexico post fuel octane ratings in anti-knock index (AKI). For fuel not to use in a foreign country, see “Prohibited Fuels” in *Fuel* ⇨ *240*.

Fuel Additives

To keep fuel systems clean, TOP TIER detergent gasoline is recommended. See *Fuel* ⇨ *240*.

If TOP TIER detergent gasoline is not available, one bottle of GM Fuel System Treatment Cleaner added to the fuel tank at every engine oil change, can help. GM Fuel System Treatment Cleaner is the only gasoline additive recommended by General Motors. It is available at your dealer.

Filling the Tank

⚠ Warning

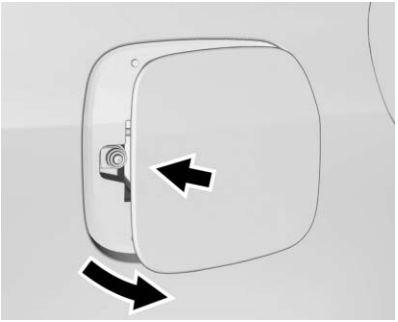
Fuel vapors and fuel fires burn violently and can cause injury or death.

- To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the fuel pump island.
- Turn off the engine when refueling.
- Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel.
- Do not leave the fuel pump unattended.
- Do not use a cell phone while refueling.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Do not reenter the vehicle while pumping fuel.
- Keep children away from the fuel pump and never let children pump fuel.
- Fuel can spray out if the refueling nozzle is inserted too quickly. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Insert the refueling nozzle slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop prior to beginning to flow fuel.



If equipped, the fuel door is locked when the vehicle doors are locked. Press 🔓 on the RKE transmitter to unlock.

To open the fuel door, push and release the rearward center edge of the door.

The vehicle has a capless refueling system and does not have a fuel cap. The filling nozzle must be fully inserted and latched prior to starting fuel flow.

⚠ Warning

Overfilling the fuel tank by more than three clicks of a standard fill nozzle may cause:

- Vehicle performance issues, including engine stalling and damage to the fuel system.
- Fuel spills.
- Potential fuel fires.

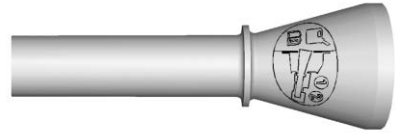
Be careful not to spill fuel. Wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *326*.

⚠ Warning

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

Filling the Tank with a Portable Gas Can

If the vehicle runs out of fuel and must be filled from a portable gas can:



1. Locate the capless funnel adapter from under the carpet in the trunk.
2. Insert and latch the funnel into the capless fuel system.

⚠ Warning

Attempting to refuel without using the funnel adapter may cause fuel spillage and damage the capless fuel system. This could cause a fire and you or others could be badly burned and the vehicle could be damaged.

3. Remove and clean the funnel adapter and return it to the storage location.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ Warning

Filling a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle can cause fuel vapors that can ignite either by static electricity or other means. You or others could be badly burned and the vehicle could be damaged. Always:

- Use approved fuel containers.
- Remove the container from the vehicle, trunk, or pickup bed before filling.
- Place the container on the ground.
- Place the nozzle inside the fill opening of the container before dispensing fuel, and

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

keep it in contact with the fill opening until filling is complete.

- Fill the container no more than 95% full to allow for expansion.
- Do not smoke, light matches, or use lighters while pumping fuel.
- Avoid using cell phones or other electronic devices.

Trailer Towing

General Towing Information

Only use towing equipment that has been designed for the vehicle. Contact your dealer or trailering dealer for assistance with preparing the vehicle for towing a trailer. Read the entire section before towing a trailer.

For towing a disabled vehicle, see *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ *322*. For towing the vehicle behind another vehicle such as a motor home, see *Recreational Vehicle Towing* ⇨ *323*.

Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips

Driving with a Trailer

When towing a trailer:

- Become familiar with the state and local laws that apply to trailer towing.

- Do not tow a trailer during the first 2 414 km (1,500 mi) to prevent damage to the engine, axle, or other parts.
- Then during the first 800 km (500 mi) of trailer towing, do not drive over 80 km/h (50 mph) and do not make starts at full throttle.
- Vehicles can tow in D (Drive). Shift the transmission to a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions.
- Do not use Adaptive Cruise Control when towing.
- The Forward Automatic Braking System should be set to Off when towing. See *Forward Automatic Braking (FAB)* ⇨ *235*.
- Turn off Parking Assist when towing.

⚠ Warning

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter if the liftgate, trunk/hatch, or rear-most window is open.

When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive with the liftgate, trunk/hatch, or rear-most window open.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Also adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air. See “Climate Control Systems” in the Index.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *198*.

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. The combination you are driving is longer and not as responsive as the vehicle itself. Get acquainted with the handling and braking of the rig before setting out for the open road.

Before starting, check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connectors, lamps, tires, and mirrors. If the trailer has electric brakes, start the combination moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes work.

During the trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure and the lamps and any trailer brakes still work.

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving the vehicle without a trailer. This can help to avoid heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

More passing distance is needed when towing a trailer. The combination will not accelerate as quickly and is longer

so it is necessary to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before returning to the lane.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. To move the trailer to the left, move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making Turns

Caution

Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. The vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.

When turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so the trailer will not strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

If the trailer turn signal bulbs burn out, the arrows on the instrument cluster will still flash for turns. It is important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

Driving on Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear *before* starting down a long or steep downgrade. If the transmission is not shifted down, the brakes might get hot and no longer work well.

Vehicles can tow in D (Drive). Shift the transmission to a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions.

When towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, consider the following: Engine coolant will boil at a lower temperature than at normal altitudes. If the engine is turned off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, the vehicle may show signs similar to engine overheating. To avoid this, let the engine run while parked, preferably on level ground, with the automatic transmission in P (Park) for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If the overheat warning comes on, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *269*.

Parking on Hills

⚠ Warning

Parking the vehicle on a hill with the trailer attached can be dangerous. If something goes wrong, the rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both the vehicle and the trailer can be damaged. When possible, always park the rig on a flat surface.

If parking the rig on a hill:

1. Press the brake pedal, but do not shift into P (Park) yet. Turn the wheels into the curb if facing downhill or into traffic if facing uphill.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.

3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the brake pedal. Then apply the parking brake and shift into P (Park).
5. Release the brake pedal.

Leaving After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine.
3. Shift into a gear.
4. Release the parking brake.
5. Let up on the brake pedal.
6. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
7. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance when Trailer Towing

The vehicle needs service more often when pulling a trailer. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *336*. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid, engine oil, axle lubricant, belts, cooling system, and brake system. It is a good idea to inspect these before and during the trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

Trailer Towing (Sedan With V6 Engine Except V-Series)

Before pulling a trailer, three important considerations have to do with weight:

- Weight of the trailer
- Weight of the trailer tongue
- Total weight on your vehicle's tires

Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It should never weigh more than 454 kg (1,000 lb). But even that can be too heavy.

It depends on how the rig is used. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature, and how much the vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can depend on any special equipment on the vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry. See “Weight of the Trailer Tongue” following.

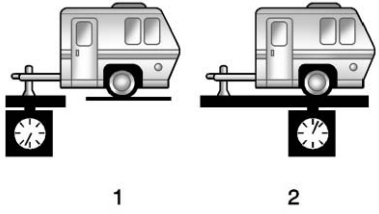
Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming the tow vehicle has the driver, a front seat passenger, all the required tow equipment, and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers, and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

Ask your dealer for trailering information or advice, or write us at our Customer Assistance Offices. See *Customer Assistance Offices* ⇨ *356*.

Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (1) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross weight of the vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo carried in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. If there are a lot of options, equipment, passengers, or cargo in the vehicle, it will reduce the tongue

weight the vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight the vehicle can tow. If towing a trailer, the tongue load must be added to the GVW because the vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186*.



The trailer tongue (1) should weigh 10 % of the total loaded trailer weight (2).

After loading the trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they are not, adjustments might be made by moving some items around in the trailer.

Total Weight on Your Vehicle's Tires

Be sure the vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. These numbers can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186*. Make sure not to go over the GVW limit for the vehicle, including the weight of the trailer tongue.

Trailer Towing (Sedan With L4 Engine, Coupe, and V-Series)

The vehicle is neither designed nor intended to tow a trailer.

Towing Equipment (Sedan With V6 Engine Except V-Series)

Hitches

Use the correct hitch equipment. See your dealer or a hitch dealer for assistance.

- The rear bumper on the vehicle is not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to it. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- Will any holes be made in the body of the vehicle when the trailer hitch is installed? If so, seal the holes when the hitch is removed. If the holes are not sealed, dirt, water, and deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from the exhaust can get into the vehicle. See *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *198*.

Safety Chains

Always attach chains between the vehicle and the trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Leave enough slack so the rig can turn. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

Does the trailer have its own brakes? State and local regulations may require the trailer to have its own braking system if loaded above a certain threshold. Trailer brake requirements vary from state to state. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so they are installed, adjusted, and maintained properly.

Because the vehicle has antilock brakes, do not tap into the vehicle's brake system. If this is done, both brake systems will not work well or at all

Towing Equipment (Sedan With L4 Engine, Coupe, and V-Series)

The vehicle is neither designed nor intended to tow a trailer.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

⚠ Warning

The Data Link Connector (DLC) is used for vehicle service and Emission Inspection/Maintenance testing. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *125*. A device connected to the DLC — such as an aftermarket fleet or driver-behavior tracking device — may interfere with vehicle systems. This could affect vehicle operation and cause a crash. Such devices may also access information stored in the vehicle's systems.

Caution

Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle or cause components to not work and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment.

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle's 12-volt battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *86* and *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *87*.

Vehicle Care

General Information

General Information 251
California Proposition 65 Warning 251
California Perchlorate Materials Requirements 252
Accessories and Modifications 252

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work 252
Hood 253
Engine Compartment Overview 254
Engine Oil 259
Engine Oil Life System 261
Automatic Transmission Fluid 263
Manual Transmission Fluid 263
Hydraulic Clutch 263
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 264
Cooling System (Engine) 265
Cooling System (Intercooler) 269
Engine Overheating 269
Washer Fluid 271
Brakes 271
Brake Fluid 272
Battery - North America 273
All-Wheel Drive 274
Starter Switch Check 275
Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check 276
Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check 276
Wiper Blade Replacement 276
Windshield Replacement 277
Gas Strut(s) 277

Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp Aiming 278

Bulb Replacement

Bulb Replacement 279
Halogen Bulbs 279
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 279
LED Lighting 279
Back-Up Lamps 279
License Plate Lamp 280

Electrical System

Electrical System Overload 281
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 281
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 282
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 285
Rear Compartment Fuse Block 287

Wheels and Tires

Tires 290
All-Season Tires 291
Winter Tires 291
Run-Flat Tires 292
Self-Sealing Tires 292
Summer Tires 293
Tire Sidewall Labeling 293
Tire Designations 295
Tire Terminology and Definitions 295
Tire Pressure 298
Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation 299
Tire Pressure Monitor System ... 299
Tire Pressure Monitor Operation 300
Tire Inspection 303
Tire Rotation 303
When It Is Time for New Tires 305
Buying New Tires 306
Different Size Tires and Wheels 307
Uniform Tire Quality Grading ... 307
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 309
Wheel Replacement 309

Tire Chains 310
If a Tire Goes Flat 311
Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 312
Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 319

Jump Starting
Jump Starting - North America 320

Towing the Vehicle
Towing the Vehicle 322
Recreational Vehicle Towing 323

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 326
Interior Care 330
Floor Mats 333

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:

ACDelco®

Genuine GM® | Parts

GM® Accessories

California Proposition 65 Warning

⚠ Warning

Most motor vehicles, including this one, as well as many of its service parts and fluids, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems, many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

See *Battery - North America* ⇨ *273* and *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *320* and the back cover.

California Perchlorate Materials Requirements

Certain types of automotive applications, such as airbag initiators, seat belt pretensioners, and lithium batteries contained in Remote Keyless Entry transmitters, may contain perchlorate materials. Special handling may be necessary. For additional information, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-dealer accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, and stability control. These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to suspension components caused by modifying vehicle height outside of factory settings will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from modifications or the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module or software modifications, is not covered under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer to accessorize the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories installed by a dealer technician.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *87*.

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to work on your vehicle if you do not have the proper knowledge, service manual, tools, or parts. Always follow owner's manual procedures and consult the service manual for your vehicle before doing any service work.

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information* ⇨ *363*.

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *86*.

Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed. See *Maintenance Records* ⇨ *348*.

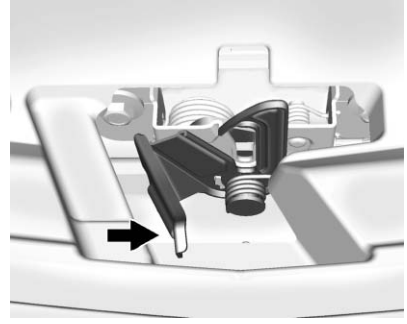
Caution

Even small amounts of contamination can cause damage to vehicle systems. Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps, or dipsticks.

Hood

To open the hood:

1. Pull the hood release handle inside the vehicle. It is on the lower left side of the instrument panel.

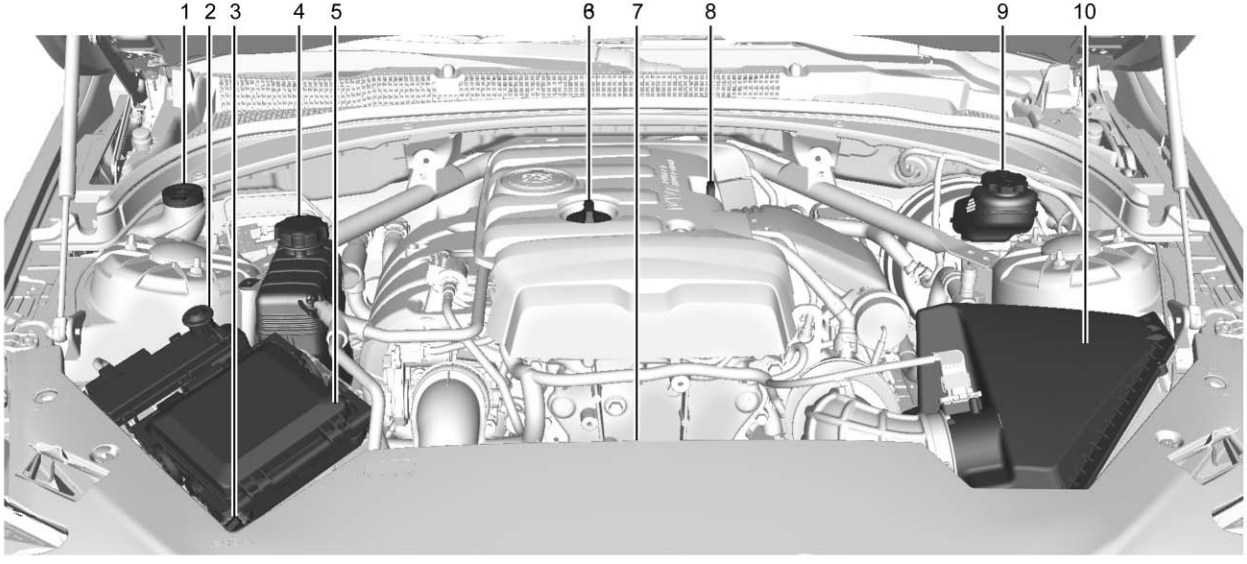


2. Go to the front of the vehicle and move the secondary hood release lever toward the right side of the vehicle.
3. Lift the hood.

To close the hood:

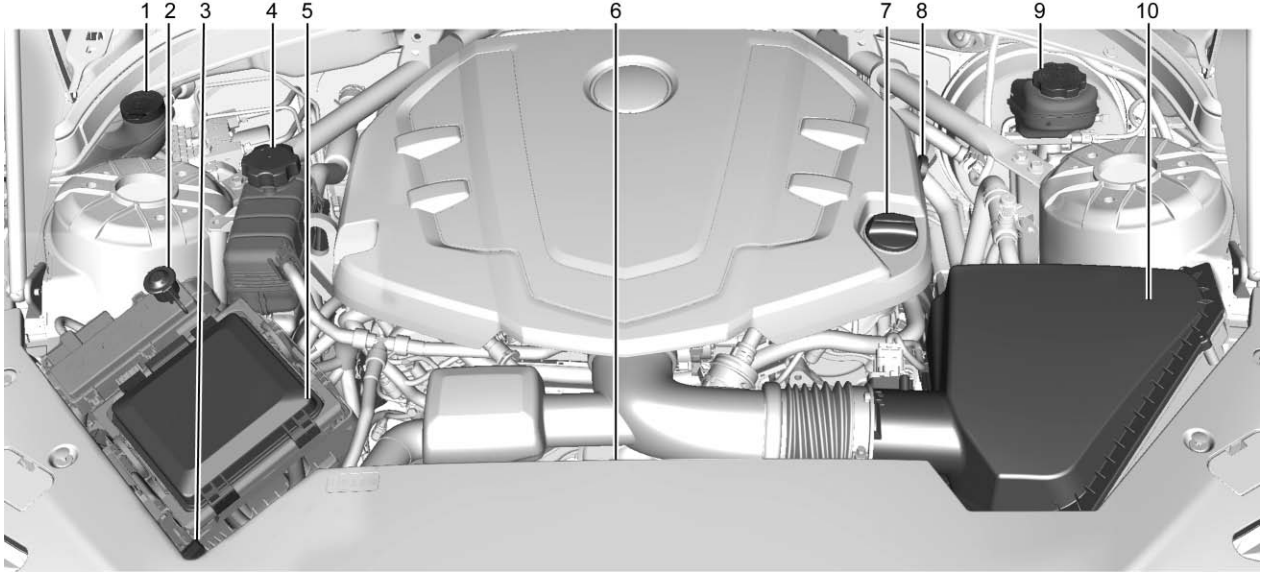
Before closing the hood, be sure all filler caps are on properly. Then, bring the hood from full open to within 152 mm (6 in) of the closed position. Pause, then push the front center of the hood with a swift, firm motion to fully close the hood.

Engine Compartment Overview



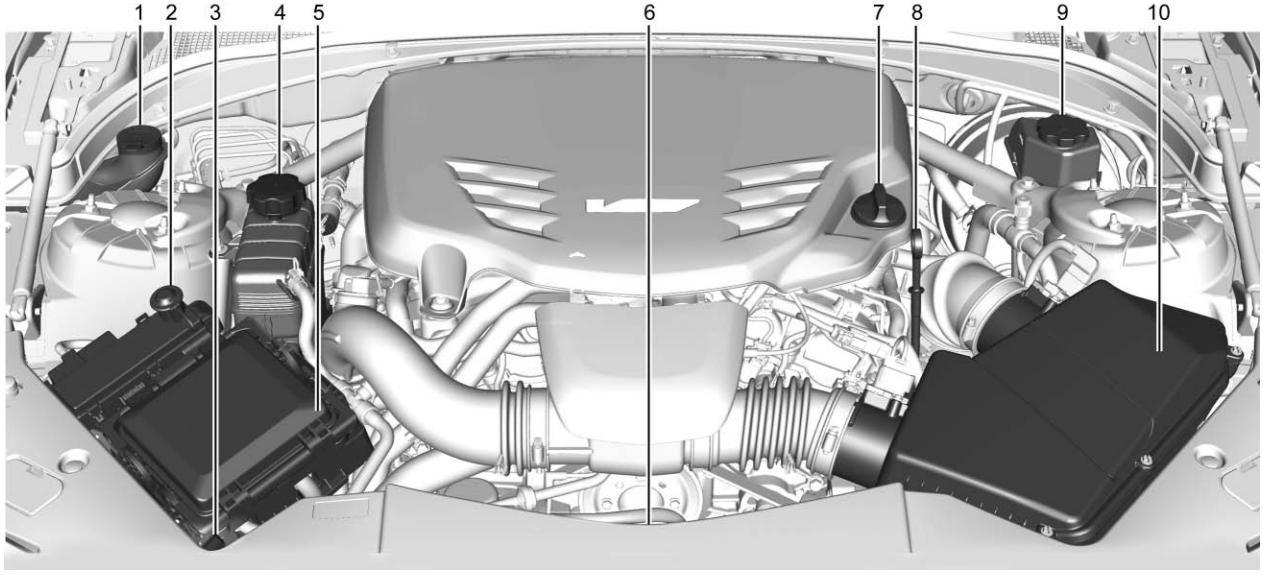
2.0L L4 Engine (LTG)

1. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *271*.
2. Remote Positive (+) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *320*.
3. Remote Negative (-) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *320*.
4. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *265* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *269*.
5. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *282*.
6. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
7. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *265* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *269*.
8. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
9. Brake/Clutch Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *272* and *Hydraulic Clutch* ⇨ *263*.
10. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *264*.



3.6L V6 Engine (LGX)

1. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *271*.
2. Remote Positive (+) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *320*.
3. Remote Negative (-) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *320*.
4. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *265* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *269*.
5. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *282*.
6. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *265* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *269*.
7. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
8. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
9. Brake/Clutch Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *272* and *Hydraulic Clutch* ⇨ *263*.
10. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *264*.



3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LF4)

1. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *271*.
2. Remote Positive (+) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *320*.
3. Remote Negative (-) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *320*.
4. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *265* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *269*.
5. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *282*.
6. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *265* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *269*.
7. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
8. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
9. Brake/Clutch Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *272* and *Hydraulic Clutch* ⇨ *263*.
10. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *264*.

Engine Oil

To ensure proper engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Use engine oil approved to the proper specification and of the proper viscosity grade. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section.
- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the proper oil level. See “Checking Engine Oil” and “When to Add Engine Oil” in this section.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *261*.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly. See “What to Do with Used Oil” in this section.

Checking Engine Oil

Check the engine oil level regularly, every 650 km (400 mi), especially prior to a long trip. The engine oil dipstick handle is a loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *254* for the location.

⚠ Warning

The engine oil dipstick handle may be hot; it could burn you. Use a towel or glove to touch the dipstick handle.

If a low oil Driver Information Center (DIC) message displays, check the oil level.

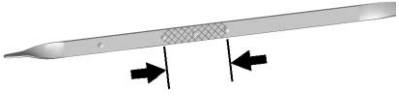
Follow these guidelines:

- To get an accurate reading, park the vehicle on level ground. Check the engine oil level after the engine has been off for at least two hours. Checking the engine oil level on steep grades or too soon after engine shutoff can result in incorrect readings. Accuracy

improves when checking a cold engine prior to starting. Remove the dipstick and check the level.

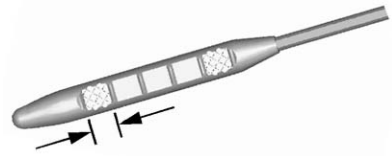
- If unable to wait two hours, the engine must be off for at least 15 minutes if the engine is warm, or at least 30 minutes if the engine is not warm. Pull out the dipstick, wipe it with a clean paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

When to Add Engine Oil



2.0L L4 Engine (LTG)

3.6L V6 Engine (LGX)



3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LF4)

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick and the engine has been off for at least 15 minutes, add 1 L (1 qt) of the recommended oil and then recheck the level. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” later in this section for an explanation of what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *350*.

Caution

Do not add too much oil. Oil levels above or below the acceptable operating range shown on the dipstick are harmful to the engine. If you find that you have an oil level above the operating range, i.e., the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged. You should drain out the excess oil or limit driving of the vehicle and seek a service professional to remove the excess amount of oil.

See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *254* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

Selecting the Right Engine Oil

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *345*.

Specification

Ask for and use full synthetic engine oils that meet the dexos1 specification. Engine oils that have been approved by GM as meeting the dexos1 specification are marked with the dexos1 approved logo. See www.gmdexos.com.

Caution

Failure to use the recommended engine oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Viscosity Grade

Use SAE 5W-30 viscosity grade engine oil for the 2.0L L4 turbo engine (LTG), 3.6L V6 engine (LGX), and 3.6L V6 twin turbo engine (LF4).

Cold Temperature Operation: In an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below –29 °C (–20 °F), an SAE 0W-30 oil may be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, it is recommended to select an oil of the correct specification. See "Specification" earlier in this section.

Engine Oil Additives/Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils meeting the dexos1 specification are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash or pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include

engine revolutions, engine temperature, and miles driven. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km (600 mi). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5 000 km (3,000 mi) since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so that the system can calculate the next engine oil change. To reset the system:

1. Using the DIC controls on the right side of the steering wheel, display REMAINING OIL LIFE on the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *134*. When remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display.
2. Press SEL on the DIC controls and hold SEL down for a few seconds to clear the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message and reset the oil life at 100%.

   Be careful not to reset the oil life display accidentally at any time other than after the oil is changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change.

The oil life system can also be reset as follows:

1. Display REMAINING OIL LIFE on the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *134*.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.

   If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is not on, the system is reset.

The system is reset when the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is off.

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the engine oil life system has not been reset. Repeat the procedure.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level.
A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

The vehicle is not equipped with a transmission fluid level dipstick. There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid. Because this procedure is difficult, this should be done at the dealer. Contact your dealer for additional information.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *336*, and be sure to use the fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *345*.

Manual Transmission Fluid

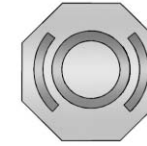
How to Check Manual Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the manual transmission fluid level.
A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *345* for the proper fluid to use.

Hydraulic Clutch

For vehicles with a manual transmission, it is not necessary to regularly check brake/clutch fluid unless there is a leak suspected. Adding fluid will not correct a leak. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

When to Check and What to Use



The brake/hydraulic clutch fluid reservoir cap has either a symbol or text specifying the type of brake fluid. The common brake/clutch fluid reservoir is filled with GM approved DOT 3 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *254* for reservoir location.

How to Check and Add Fluid

Visually check the brake/clutch fluid reservoir to make sure the fluid level is at the MIN (minimum) line on the side of the reservoir. The brake/hydraulic clutch fluid system should be closed and sealed.

Do not remove the cap to check the fluid level or to top off the fluid level. Remove the cap only when necessary to add the proper fluid until the level reaches the MIN line.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

The engine air cleaner/filter is in the engine compartment on the driver side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *254* for location.

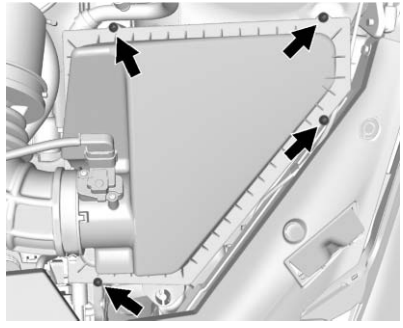
When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

For intervals on changing and inspecting the engine air cleaner/filter, see *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *336*.

How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

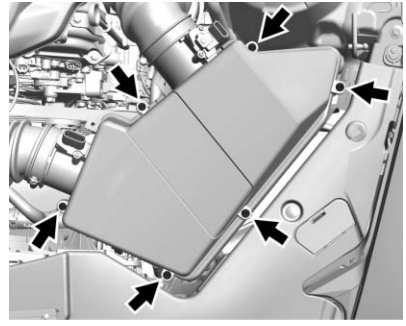
Do not start the engine or have the engine running with the engine air cleaner/filter housing open. Before removing the engine air cleaner/filter, make sure that the engine air cleaner/filter housing and nearby components are free of dirt and debris. Remove the engine air cleaner/filter. Lightly tap and shake the engine air cleaner/filter (away from the vehicle), to release loose dust and dirt. Inspect the engine air cleaner/filter for damage, and replace if damaged. Do not clean the engine air cleaner/filter or components with water or compressed air.

To inspect or replace the air cleaner/filter:



2.0L L4 Engine (LTG) Shown, 3.6L V6 Engine (LGX) Similar

1. Remove the four screws and lift the cover out of the assembly.
2. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter.
3. Lower the cover and secure with the four screws.



3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LF4)

1. Remove the six screws and lift the cover out of the assembly.
2. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filters. The filters can be removed from the top cover by pressing the buttons.
3. Lower the cover and secure with the six screws.

⚠ Warning

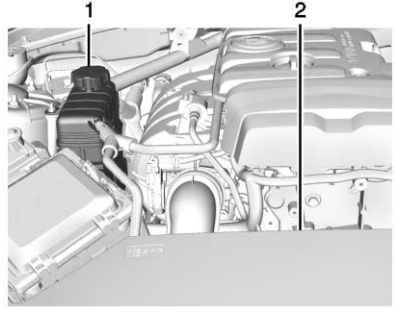
Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. Use caution when working on the engine and do not drive with the air cleaner/filter off.

Caution

If the air cleaner/filter is off, dirt can easily get into the engine, which could damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when driving.

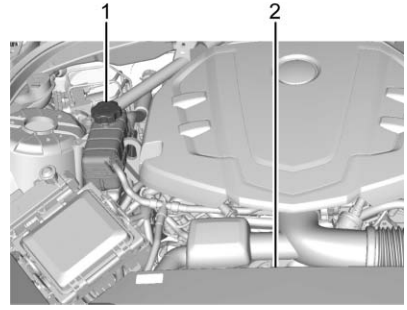
Cooling System (Engine)

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct working temperature.



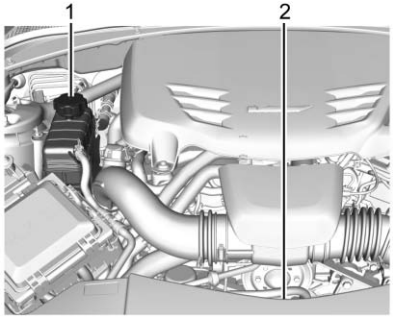
2.0L L4 Engine (LTG)

1. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap
2. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)



3.6L V6 Engine (LGX)

1. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap
2. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)



3.6L V6 Engine (LF4)

1. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap
2. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)

⚠ Warning

An underhood electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Do not touch heater or radiator hoses, or other engine parts. They can be very hot and can burn you. Do not run the engine if there is a leak; all coolant could leak out. That could cause an engine fire and can burn you. Fix any leak before driving the vehicle.

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL engine coolant. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *336* and *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *345*.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *269*.

What to Use

⚠ Warning

Do not touch heater or radiator hoses, or other engine parts. They can be very hot and can burn you. Do not run the engine if there is a leak; all coolant could leak out. That could cause an engine fire and can burn you. Fix any leak before driving the vehicle.

Use a 50/50 mixture of clean drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant. This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to –37 °C (–34 °F), outside temperature.
- Gives boiling protection up to 129 °C (265 °F), engine temperature.
- Protects against rust and corrosion.
- Will not damage aluminum parts.
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature.

Caution

Do not use anything other than a mix of DEX-COOL coolant that meets GM Standard GMW3420 and clean, drinkable water. Anything else can cause damage to the engine cooling system and the vehicle, which would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

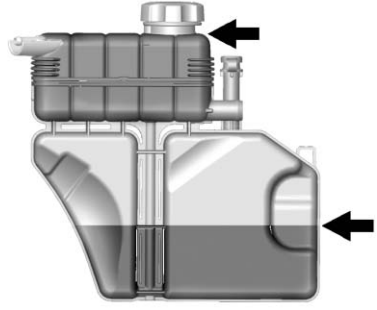
Never dispose of engine coolant by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, or into sewers, streams, or bodies of water. Have the coolant changed by an authorized service center, familiar with legal requirements regarding used coolant disposal. This will help protect the environment and your health.

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

It is normal to see coolant moving in the upper coolant hose return line when the engine is running. It is also normal to see bubbles entering the surge tank through the small hose.

Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down.



If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the cold fill line, add a 50/50 mixture of clean drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

Be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done.

It is normal for the coolant level in the bottom chamber to rise and fall with operating temperature and ambient conditions. Coolant will evaporate from the bottom chamber in normal operation. This will happen faster when the vehicle is driven for long periods in hot, dry conditions.

If no coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank, add coolant as follows:

How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

⚠ Warning

Spilling coolant on hot engine parts can burn you. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough.

⚠ Warning

Plain water, or other liquids such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but there would not be an overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned.

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

Caution

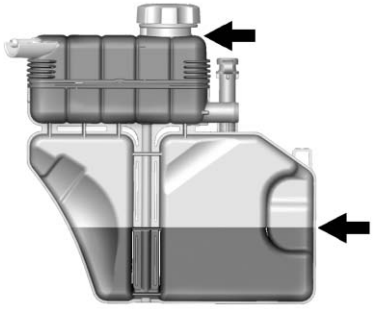
Failure to follow the specific coolant fill procedure could cause the engine to overheat and could cause system damage. If coolant is not visible in the surge tank, contact your dealer.

If no problem is found, check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at the bottom of the fill neck, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is cool before you do it.

1. Remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap from the top chamber when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

   Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise. If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. This will allow any pressure still left to be vented out the discharge hose.

2. Keep turning the pressure cap slowly and remove it. Open the surge tank service port cap to the lower chamber



3. Fill the surge tank top chamber with the proper mixture to the bottom of the fill neck. The top chamber needs to be completely full. Fill the surge tank bottom chamber through the service port to approximately half.
4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off and the surge tank service port cap open, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank top chamber may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper mixture to the surge tank top chamber until the level reaches the bottom of the fill neck.
5. Replace the surge tank pressure cap tightly and close the surge tank service port cap.
6. Check the level in the surge tank top and bottom chambers when the cooling system has cooled down. If the coolant is not at the proper levels, repeat Steps 1–6 and reinstall the pressure cap and close the service port. If the coolant still is not at the proper levels when the system cools down again, see your dealer.

Caution

If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

Cooling System (Intercooler)

Intercooler ATS-V Only

The 3.6L V6 twin turbo engine (LF4) has an intercooler cooling system.

The intercooler cooling system has a special procedure for draining and adding coolant. Because this procedure is difficult, see the dealer for service if the intercooler is low on coolant or a leak is suspected.

Engine Overheating

The vehicle has several indicators to warn of the engine overheating.

There is an engine coolant temperature gauge and an engine coolant temperature warning light on the instrument cluster.
See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge* ⇨ *122* and *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light* ⇨ *130*. The vehicle may also display a message on the Driver Information Center (DIC).

If the decision is made not to lift the hood when this warning appears, get service help right away. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *358*.

If the decision is made to lift the hood, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Then check to see if the engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, do not continue to run the engine. Have the vehicle serviced.

Caution

Do not run the engine if there is a leak in the engine cooling system. This can cause a loss of all coolant and can damage the system and vehicle. Have any leaks fixed right away.

If Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

If Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment with No Overheat Warning (V-Series Only)

The V-Series hood vent is functional, and will allow water from rain and car washes to enter the engine compartment and contact hot surfaces. If steam is seen coming from the hood vent with no accompanying overheat warning, no action is required.

If No Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.

If the overheat warning is displayed with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. When it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral) for an automatic transmission or Neutral for a manual transmission, and let the engine idle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is no longer in the overheated area or the engine coolant

temperature warning light no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front.
If the warning does not come back on, continue to drive normally and have the cooling system checked for proper fill and function.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

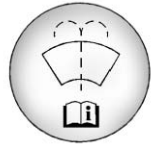
If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the warning is still displayed, turn off the engine until it cools down.

Washer Fluid

What to Use

When windshield washer fluid is needed, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If operating the vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

Adding Washer Fluid



Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *254* for reservoir location.

Caution

- Do not use washer fluid that contains any type of water repellent coating. This can cause the wiper blades to chatter or skip.
- Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in the windshield washer. It can damage the windshield washer system and paint.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage the washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system.
- When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer instructions for adding water.
- Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.

Brakes

Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be

heard all the time when the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

⚠ Warning

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to a crash. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

Caution

Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

If equipped with high performance brake linings, there could be an increased build-up of brake dust as well as minor noises as compared to standard brake linings.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications. See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *350*.

Brake pads should be replaced as complete sets.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service may be required.

Replacing Brake System Parts

Always replace brake system parts with new, approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes may not work properly. The braking performance expected can change in many other ways if the wrong replacement brake parts are installed or parts are improperly installed.

Brake Fluid

The brake/clutch master cylinder reservoir is filled with GM approved DOT 3 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *254* for the location of the reservoir.

Checking Brake Fluid

Place the vehicle in P (Park) or Neutral with the parking brake applied if equipped with a manual transmission. On a level surface, the brake fluid level should be between the minimum and maximum marks on the brake fluid reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir may go down:

- Normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake/clutch hydraulic system. Have the brake/clutch hydraulic system fixed. With a leak, the brakes will not work well.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it.

Do not top off the brake/clutch fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake/clutch hydraulic system.

⚠ Warning

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake/clutch hydraulic system.

When the brake/clutch fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *127*.

Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Replace brake fluid at the specified intervals to prevent increased stopping distance. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *336*.

What to Add

Use only GM approved DOT 3 brake fluid from a clean, sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *345*.

⚠ Warning

The wrong or contaminated brake fluid could result in damage to the brake system. This could result in the loss of braking leading to a possible injury. Always use the proper GM approved brake fluid.

Caution

If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Immediately wash off any painted surface.

Battery - North America

The original equipment battery is maintenance free. Do not remove the cap and do not add fluid.

The battery is in the trunk, beneath the trim panel, on the driver side of the vehicle. Refer to the replacement number shown on the original battery label when a new battery is needed.

⚠ Warning

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. **WASH HANDS AFTER HANDLING.** For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

See *California Proposition 65 Warning* ⇨ *251* and the back cover.

After a power loss, such as disconnecting the battery or removing the maxi fuses in the power distribution fuse block, the following steps must be performed to calibrate the electronic throttle control. If this is not done, the engine will not run properly.

1. Turn the ignition on but do not start the engine.
2. Leave the ignition on for at least three minutes so that the electronic throttle control will cycle and relearn its home position.
3. Turn the ignition off.
4. Start and run the engine for at least 30 seconds.

If equipped with the Stop/Start system, the engine will not engage auto stop after the battery is disconnected. After reconnecting the battery, the vehicle must sit untouched for four hours. See “Auto Engine Stop/Start” in *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *192*.

Vehicle Storage

⚠ Warning

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting - North*

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

America ⇨ *320* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Infrequent Usage: Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery to keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger.

All-Wheel Drive

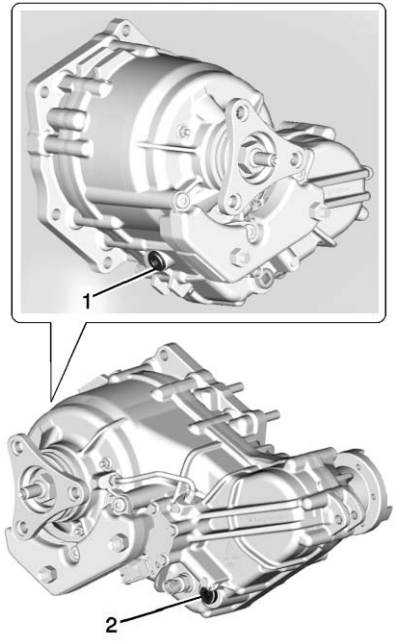
If the vehicle is equipped with All-Wheel-Drive (AWD), this is an additional system that needs lubrication.

Transfer Case

When to Check Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check the transfer case fluid unless a leak is suspected or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

How to Check Lubricant



1. Fill Plug
2. Drain Plug

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the fill plug hole, on the transfer case, some lubricant will need to be added. Add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the fill plug hole. Use care not to overtighten the fill plug.

What to Use

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *345*.

Starter Switch Check

⚠ Warning

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle.
2. Apply both the parking brake and the regular brake.

   Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.
3. For automatic transmission vehicles, try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in P (Park) or N (Neutral). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your dealer for service.

   For manual transmission vehicles, put the shift lever in Neutral, push the clutch pedal down halfway, and try to start the engine. The vehicle should start only when the clutch pedal is pushed down all the way to the floor. If the vehicle starts when the clutch pedal is not pushed all the way down, contact your dealer for service.

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check

⚠ Warning

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Apply the parking brake. Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition on, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of P (Park) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of P (Park), contact your dealer for service.

Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check

⚠ Warning

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and the transmission in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to P (Park). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer if service is required.

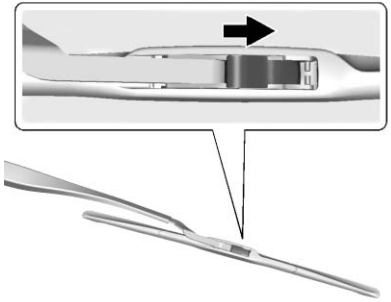
Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected for wear and cracking. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *336*.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. For proper type and length, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts* ⇨ *346*.

To replace the windshield wiper blade:

1. Pull the windshield wiper assembly away from the windshield.



2. Lift up on the latch in the middle of the wiper blade where the wiper arm attaches.
3. With the latch open, pull the wiper blade down toward the windshield far enough to release it from the J-hooked end of the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.

   Allowing the wiper blade arm to touch the windshield when no wiper blade is installed could damage the windshield. Any damage that occurs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not allow the wiper blade arm to touch the windshield.
5. Reverse Steps 1–3 for wiper blade replacement.

Windshield Replacement

HUD System

The windshield is part of the HUD system. If the windshield must be replaced, get one that is designed for HUD or the HUD image may look out of focus.

Driver Assistance Systems

If the windshield needs to be replaced and the vehicle is equipped with a front camera sensor for the Driver Assistance Systems, a GM replacement windshield is recommended. The replacement windshield must be installed according to GM specifications for proper alignment. If it is not, these systems may not work properly, they may display messages, or they may not work at all. See your dealer for proper windshield replacement.

Gas Strut(s)

This vehicle is equipped with gas strut(s) to provide assistance in lifting and holding open the hood/trunk/liftgate system in full open position.

⚠ Warning

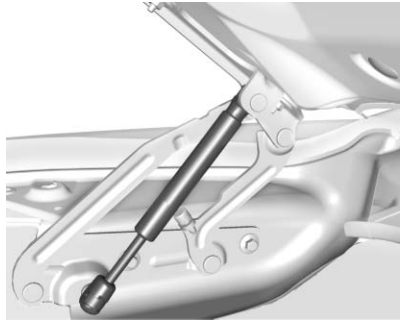
If the gas struts that hold open the hood, trunk, and/or liftgate fail, you or others could be seriously injured. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service immediately. Visually inspect the gas struts for signs of wear, cracks, or other damage periodically. Check to make sure the hood/trunk/liftgate is held open with enough force. If struts are failing to hold the hood/trunk/liftgate, do not operate. Have the vehicle serviced.

Caution

Do not apply tape or hang any objects from gas struts. Also do not push down or pull on gas struts. This may cause damage to the vehicle.

See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *336*.

Hood



Trunk

Liftgate

Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp aim has been preset and should need no further adjustment.

If the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp aim may be affected. If adjustment to the headlamps is necessary, see your dealer.

Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, or any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

Halogen Bulbs

⚠ Warning

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting

⚠ Warning

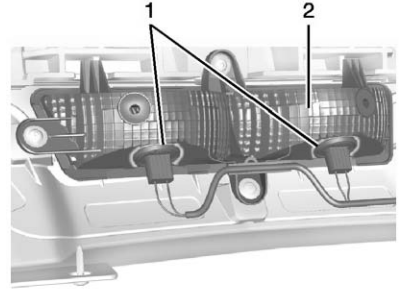
The High Intensity Discharge (HID) lighting system operates at a very high voltage. If you try to service any of the system components, you could be seriously injured. Have your dealer or a qualified technician service them.

After an HID headlamp bulb has been replaced, the beam might be a slightly different shade than it was originally. This is normal.

LED Lighting

This vehicle has several LED lamps. For replacement of any LED lighting assembly, contact your dealer.

Back-Up Lamps

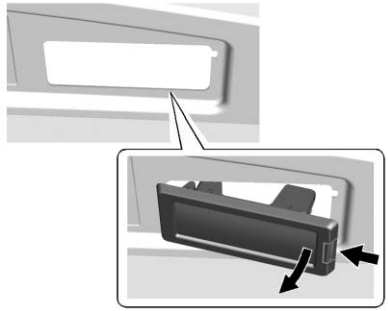


1. Back-Up Bulb Socket
2. Back-Up Lamp Assembly

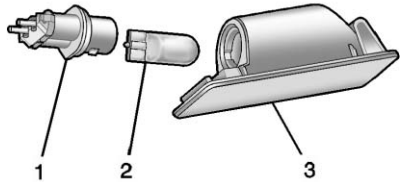
To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Reach under the rear fascia and locate the back-up lamp assembly.
2. Remove the bulb socket (1) by turning counterclockwise and pulling straight out of the lamp assembly (2).
3. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
4. Install the new bulb in the bulb socket.
5. Install the bulb socket by turning clockwise.

License Plate Lamp



Lamp Assembly



Bulb Assembly

1. Bulb Socket
2. Bulb
3. Lamp Assembly

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Push the lamp assembly (3) toward the center of the vehicle.
2. Pull the lamp assembly down to remove.
3. Turn the bulb socket (1) counterclockwise to remove it from the lamp assembly (3).
4. Pull the bulb (2) straight out of the bulb socket (1).
5. Push the replacement bulb straight into the bulb socket and turn the bulb socket clockwise to install it into the lamp assembly.
6. Push the lamp assembly back into position until the release tab locks into place.

Electrical System

Electrical System Overload

The vehicle has fuses and circuit breakers to protect against an electrical system overload.

When the current electrical load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the current load returns to normal or the problem is fixed. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

Fuses and circuit breakers protect power devices in the vehicle.

Replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If there is a problem on the road and a fuse needs to be replaced, the same amperage fuse can be borrowed. Choose some feature of the vehicle that is not needed to use and replace it as soon as possible.

Headlamp Wiring

An electrical overload may cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. Have the headlamp wiring checked right away if the lamps go on and off or remain off.

Windshield Wipers

If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the windshield wipers will stop until the motor cools and will then restart.

Although the circuit is protected from electrical overload, overload due to heavy snow or ice may cause wiper linkage damage. Always clear ice and heavy snow from the windshield before using the windshield wipers.

If the overload is caused by an electrical problem and not snow or ice, be sure to get it fixed.

Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of damage caused by electrical problems.

⚠ Danger

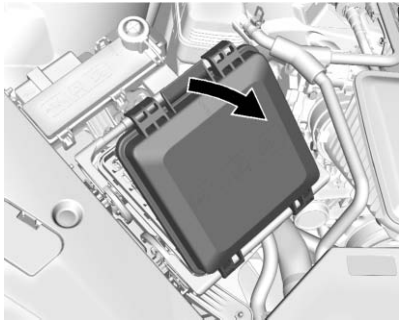
Fuses and circuit breakers are marked with their ampere rating. Do not exceed the specified amperage rating when replacing fuses and circuit breakers. Use of an oversized fuse or circuit breaker can result in a vehicle fire. You and others could be seriously injured or killed.

To check a fuse, look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure to replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

Fuses of the same amperage can be temporarily borrowed from another fuse location, if a fuse goes out. Replace the fuse as soon as possible.

Engine Compartment Fuse Block

The underhood fuse block is on the passenger side of the engine compartment.

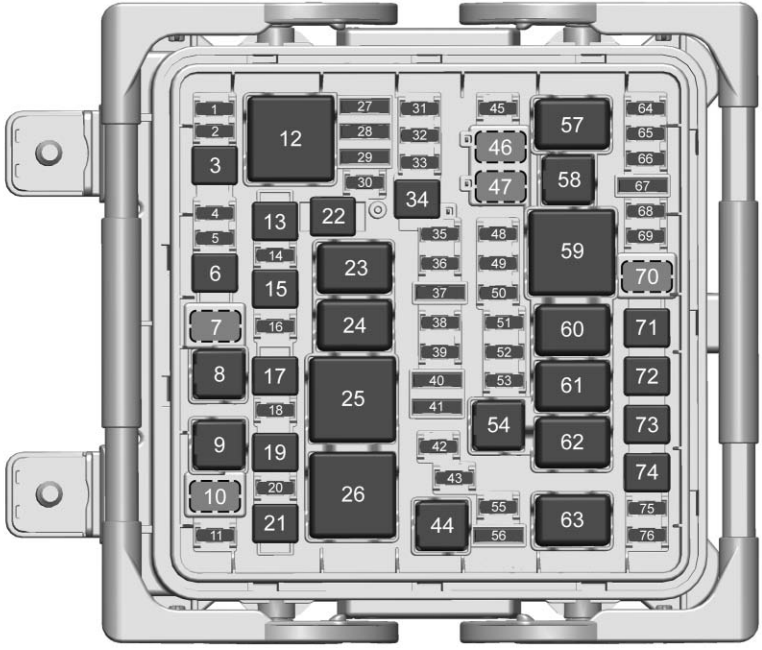


Lift the fuse block cover to access the fuses.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses and relays shown.

Caution

Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.



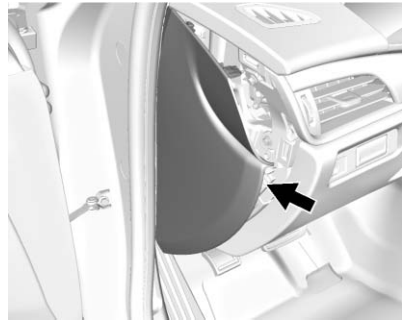
Fuses	Usage
1	–
2	–
3	Passenger motorized seat belt
4	–
5	–
6	Driver power seat
7	–
9	–
10	–
11	–
12	–
13	Passenger power seat
14	–
15	Passive entry/Passive start
16	–
17	Headlamp washer
18	–
19	Antilock brake system pump

Fuses	Usage
20	Antilock brake system valve
21	–
22	Driver motorized seat belt
26	–
27	–/Heated seat 2
28	–/Reverse lock out
29	Adaptive forward lighting, Automatic headlamp leveling/ Pedestrian protection
30	–
31	Passenger window switch
32	–
33	Sunroof
34	Front wiper
35	Steering column lock
36	Rear bussed electrical center/Ignition
37	–/Malfunction Indicator Lamp/ Ignition
38	Aeroshutter
39	O2 sensor/Emissions
40	Ignition coil even/O2 sensor
41	Ignition coil odd
42	Engine control module
43	–
44	–
45	Washer
48	Instrument panel/ Body/Ignition
49	Fuel system control module/Ignition
50	Heated steering wheel
51	Engine control module/Ignition
52	Transmission control module/Ignition
53	Coolant pump
55	–
56	Transmission control module
64	Adaptive headlamp leveling
65	Left HID headlamp
66	Right HID headlamp
67	Left/Right high-beam headlamp
68	Headlamp leveling motor
69	Horn
71	Cooling fan
72	Starter 2
73	Brake vacuum pump
74	Starter 1
75	Air conditioning clutch
76	–

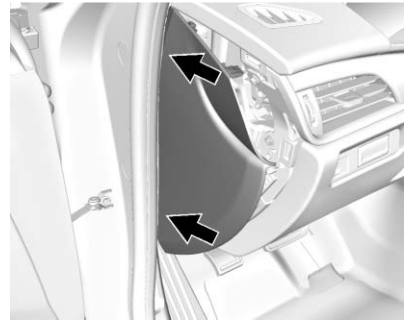
Relays	Usage
8	Headlamp washer
23	Wiper control
24	Wiper speed
25	Engine control module
46	Rear washer
47	Front washer
54	Coolant pump
57	Low-beam headlamp relay
58	High-beam headlamp
59	Run/Crank
60	Starter 2
61	Vacuum pump
62	Starter 1
63	Air conditioning control
70	Horn

Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The instrument panel fuse block is in the end of the driver side of the instrument panel.

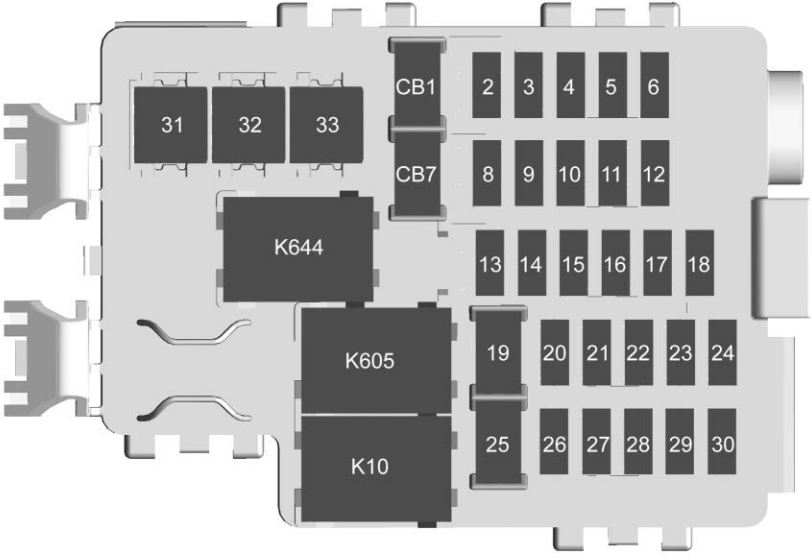


To access the fuses, remove the end panel by gently prying with a plastic tool near each clip, beginning at the point shown.



To install the end cover, insert the tabs on the back of the cover into the slots in the instrument panel at the points shown. Align the clips with the slots in the instrument panel, and press the cover into place.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses and relays shown.



Fuses	Usage
2	Cupholder motor

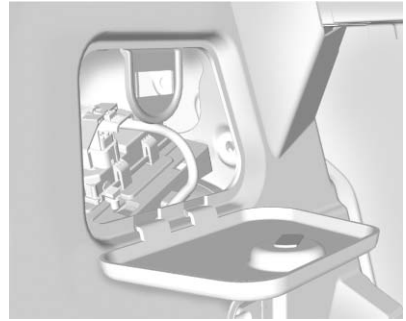
Fuses	Usage
3	Electric steering column lock
4	–
5	–
6	Tilt and telescopic steering column
8	Data link connector
9	Glovebox release
10	Shunt
11	Body control module 1
12	Body control module 5
13	Body control module 6
14	–
15	Body control module 7
16	Transmission control module
17	–
18	–
19	Auxiliary power outlet
20	Lighter

Fuses	Usage
21	Wireless charger
22	Sensing diagnostic module/Automatic occupant sensing
23	Radio/DVD/Heating, ventilation/Air conditioning control
24	Display
25	Heated steering wheel
26	Wireless charger
27	Steering wheel controls
28	–
29	Visor vanity lamp
30	–
31	Retained accessory power/Accessory
32	–
33	Front heating, ventilation/Air conditioning control blower

Circuit Breakers	Usage
CB1	Auxiliary power outlet
CB7	–

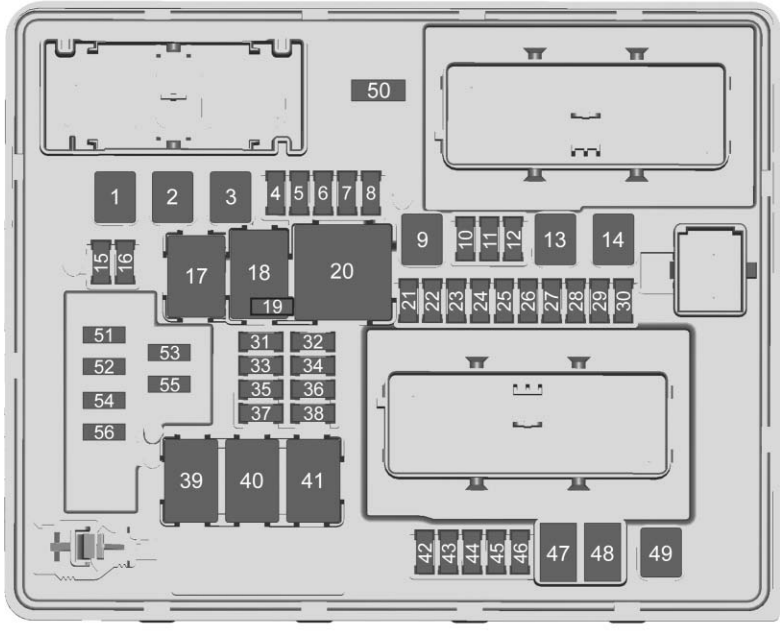
Relays	Usage
K10	Retained accessory power/Accessory
K605	Logistics
K644	Retained accessory power/Accessory / Glovebox release

Rear Compartment Fuse Block



The rear compartment fuse block is behind a cover on the driver side of the rear compartment.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.



Fuses	Usage
1	Rear driver control module/DC DC transformer
2	Left window
3	Body control module 8
4	Alternate current inverter
5	Passive entry/Passive start/Battery 1
6	Body control module 4
7	Heated mirrors
8	Amplifier
9	Rear window defogger
10	Glass break
11	Trailer connector
12	OnStar (if equipped)
13	Right window
14	Electric parking brake

Fuses	Usage
15	–
16	Trunk release
19	Logistics
21	Mirror window module
22	–
23	Canister vent
24	Body control module 2
25	Rear vision camera
26	Front ventilated seats
27	Side blind zone alert/ Lane departure warning/External object calculating module
28	Trailer/Sunshade
29	Rear heated seats
30	Semi-active damping system

Fuses	Usage
31	Transfer case control module/Rear control drive module
32	Theft module/ Universal garage door opener/Rain sensor
33	Ultrasonic parking assist
34	Radio/DVD
35	– /Exhaust valve (V-series)
36	Trailer
37	Fuel system control module
38	Fuel pump prime/ Exhaust valve (V-series)
39	–
42	Memory seat module
43	Body control module 3

Fuses	Usage
44	–
45	Battery regulated voltage control
46	Engine control module/Battery
47	–
48	–
49	Trailer module
53	–
55	–

Relays	Usage
17	Trailer
18	Logistics
20	Rear window defogger
40	Run crank 2 (V-series)
41	Fuel pump prime/ Run crank 2

Relays	Usage
50	Child door lock security
51	Rear closure
52	Rear closure 2
54	Door lock security
56	Fuel door

Wheels and Tires

Tires

Every new GM vehicle has high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. See the warranty manual for information regarding the tire warranty and where to get service. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer.

⚠ Warning

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.
- Overloading the tires can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. There could be a blowout and a serious crash. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186*.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting crash could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when the tires are cold.
- Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when hitting a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.
- Worn or old tires can cause a crash. If the tread is badly worn, replace them.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Replace any tires that have been damaged by impacts with potholes, curbs, etc.
- Improperly repaired tires can cause a crash. Only the dealer or an authorized tire service center should repair, replace, dismount, and mount the tires.
- Do not spin the tires in excess of 56 km/h (35 mph) on slippery surfaces such as snow, mud, ice, etc. Excessive spinning may cause the tires to explode.

See *Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation* ⇨ *299* for inflation pressure adjustment for high-speed driving.

All-Season Tires

This vehicle may come with all-season tires. These tires are designed to provide good overall performance on most road surfaces and weather conditions. Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. Original equipment all-season tires can be identified by the last two characters of this TPC code, which will be “MS.”

Consider installing winter tires on the vehicle if frequent driving on snow or ice-covered roads is expected. All-season tires provide adequate performance for most winter driving conditions, but they may not offer the same level of traction or performance as winter tires on snow or ice-covered roads. See *Winter Tires* ⇨ *291*.

Winter Tires

This vehicle was not originally equipped with winter tires. Winter tires are designed for increased traction on snow and ice-covered roads. Consider installing winter tires on the vehicle if frequent driving on ice or snow covered roads is expected. See your dealer for details regarding winter tire availability and proper tire selection. Also, see *Buying New Tires* ⇨ *306*.

With winter tires, there may be decreased dry road traction, increased road noise, and shorter tread life. After changing to winter tires, be alert for changes in vehicle handling and braking.

If using winter tires:

- Use tires of the same brand and tread type on all four wheel positions.
- Use only radial ply tires of the same size, load range, and speed rating as the original equipment tires.

Winter tires with the same speed rating as the original equipment tires may not be available for H, V, W, Y, and ZR speed rated tires. If winter tires with a lower speed rating are chosen, never exceed the tire's maximum speed capability.

Run-Flat Tires

This vehicle, when new, may have had run-flat tires. There is no spare tire, no tire changing equipment, and no place to store a tire in the vehicle.

The vehicle also has a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) that indicates a loss of tire pressure in any of the tires.

⚠ Warning

If the low tire warning light displays on the instrument cluster, the handling capabilities will be reduced during severe maneuvers. Driving too fast could cause loss of control and you or others could be injured. Do not drive over 90 km/h (55 mph) when the low tire warning light is displayed. Drive cautiously and check the tire pressures as soon as possible.

Run-flat tires can be driven on with no air pressure. There is no need to stop on the side of the road to change the tire. Continue driving; however, do not drive too far or too fast. Driving on the tire may not be possible if there is permanent damage. To prevent permanent damage, keep speed below 80 km/h (50 mph). With a light load the vehicle can be driven up to 100 km (60 mi); with a moderate load 80 km (50 mi); and a heavy load 45 km (25 mi). As soon as possible, contact the nearest authorized GM or run-flat servicing facility for inspection and repair or replacement.

When driving on a deflated run-flat tire, avoid potholes and other road hazards that could damage the tire and/or wheel beyond repair. When a tire has been damaged, or driven any distance while deflated, check with an authorized run-flat tire service center to determine whether the tire can be repaired or should be replaced. To maintain the run-flat feature, all replacement tires must be run-flat tires.

To locate the nearest GM or run-flat servicing facility, call Customer Assistance.

The valve stems on run-flat tires have sensors that are part of the TPMS. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System* ⇨ *299*. These sensors contain batteries that are designed to last for 10 years under normal driving conditions. See your dealer for wheel or sensor replacement.

Caution

Using liquid sealants can damage the tire valves and tire pressure monitor sensors in the run-flat tires. This damage is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not use liquid sealants in run-flat tires.

Self-Sealing Tires

This vehicle may have self-sealing tires. These tires have a material inside that can seal punctures up to 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area. The tire may lose air pressure if the sidewall is damaged or the tread puncture is too large. If the Tire Pressure Monitor System indicates the tire pressure is low, inspect the tire for

damage and inflate it to the recommended pressure. If the tire is unable to maintain the recommended pressure, contact the nearest authorized GM servicing facility immediately for inspection and repair or replacement. To locate the nearest GM servicing facility, call GM Customer Assistance.

Caution

Do not drive on a deflated self-sealing tire as this could damage the tire. Make sure the tire is inflated to the recommended pressure or have it immediately repaired or replaced.

When tire replacement is needed replace with a self-sealing tire, because the vehicle does not come with a spare tire or tire changing equipment.

Summer Tires

This vehicle may come with high performance summer tires. These tires have a special tread and compound that are optimized for maximum dry and wet road performance. This special tread and compound will have decreased performance in cold climates, and on ice and snow. It is recommended that winter tires be installed on the vehicle if frequent driving at temperatures below approximately 5 °C (40 °F) or on ice or snow covered roads is expected. See *Winter Tires* ⇨ *291*.

Caution

High performance summer tires have rubber compounds that lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below –7 °C (20 °F). Always store high performance summer tires indoors and at temperatures above –7 °C (20 °F) when not in use. If the tires have

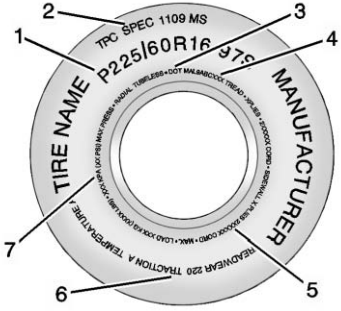
(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

been subjected to –7 °C (20 °F) or less, let them warm up in a heated space to at least 5 °C (40 °F) for 24 hours or more before being installed or driving a vehicle on which they are installed. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires. Always inspect tires before use. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *303*.

Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into its sidewall. The examples show a typical passenger tire sidewall.



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire Example

(1) Tire Size : The tire size is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the “Tire Size” illustration later in this section for more detail.

(2) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification) : Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

(3) DOT (Department of Transportation) : The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

DOT Tire Date of Manufacture : The last four digits of the TIN indicate the tire manufactured date. The first two digits represent the week (01-52) and the last two digits, the year. For example, the third week of the year 2010 would have a four-digit DOT date of 0310.

(4) Tire Identification Number (TIN) : The letters and numbers following the DOT code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(5) Tire Ply Material : The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

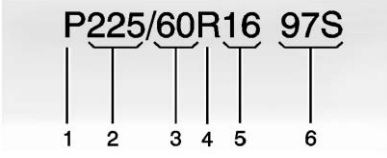
(6) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) : Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. For more information see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading* ⇨ *307*.

(7) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit : Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.

Tire Designations

Tire Size

The following is an example of a typical passenger vehicle tire size.



(1) Passenger (P-Metric) Tire : The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter P as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

(2) Tire Width : The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

(3) Aspect Ratio : A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 60, as shown in item 3 of the illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 60 percent as high as it is wide.

(4) Construction Code : A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

(5) Rim Diameter : Diameter of the wheel in inches.

(6) Service Description : These characters represent the load index and speed rating of the tire. The load index represents the load carrying capacity a tire is certified to carry. The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load.

Tire Terminology and Definitions

Air Pressure : The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in kPa (kilopascal) or psi (pounds per square inch).

Accessory Weight : The combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are automatic transmission, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

Aspect Ratio : The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

Belt : A rubber coated layer of cords between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

Bead : The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

Bias Ply Tire : A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Cold Tire Pressure : The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in kPa (kilopascal) or psi (pounds per square inch) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Tire Pressure ⇨ 298*.

Curb Weight : The weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

DOT Markings : A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand, and date of production.

GVWR : Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. See *Vehicle Load Limits ⇨ 186*.

GAWR FRT : Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle. See *Vehicle Load Limits ⇨ 186*.

GAWR RR : Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle. See *Vehicle Load Limits ⇨ 186*.

Intended Outboard Sidewall : The side of an asymmetrical tire that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

Kilopascal (kPa) : The metric unit for air pressure.

Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire : A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

Load Index : An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

Maximum Inflation Pressure : The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire can be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

Maximum Load Rating : The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight : The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, and production options weight.

Normal Occupant Weight : The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 68 kg (150 lb). See *Vehicle Load Limits ⇨ 186*.

Occupant Distribution : Designated seating positions.

Outward Facing Sidewall : The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

Passenger (P-Metric) Tire : A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

Recommended Inflation Pressure : Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard.
See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *298* and *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186*.

Radial Ply Tire : A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Rim : A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

Sidewall : The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

Speed Rating : An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

Traction : The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

Tread : The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Treadwear Indicators : Narrow bands, sometimes called wear bars, that show across the tread of a tire when only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires* ⇨ *305*.

UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards) : A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading* ⇨ *307*.

Vehicle Capacity Weight : The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 68 kg (150 lb) plus the rated cargo load. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186*.

Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire : Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

Vehicle Placard : A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See “Tire and Loading Information Label” under *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186*.

Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

Caution

Neither tire underinflation nor overinflation is good. Underinflated tires, or tires that do not have enough air, can result in:

- Tire overloading and overheating which could lead to a blowout.
- Premature or irregular wear.
- Poor handling.
- Reduced fuel economy.

Overinflated tires, or tires that have too much air, can result in:

- Unusual wear.
- Poor handling.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Rough ride.
- Needless damage from road hazards.

The Tire and Loading Information label on the vehicle indicates the original equipment tires and the correct cold tire inflation pressures. The recommended pressure is the minimum air pressure needed to support the vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ➪ *186*.

How the vehicle is loaded affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load the vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

When to Check

Check the tires once a month or more.

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check the tire pressure. Proper tire inflation cannot be determined by looking at the tire. Check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold, meaning the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or no more than 1.6 km (1 mi).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gauge firmly onto the valve to get the pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary.

If the inflation pressure is low, add air until the recommended pressure is reached. If the inflation pressure in high, press on the metal stem in the center of

the tire valve to release air. Re-check the tire pressure with the tire gauge.

Put the valve caps back on the valve stems to keep out dirt and moisture and prevent leaks. Use only valve caps designed for the vehicle by GM. TPMS sensors could be damaged and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation

⚠ Warning

Driving at high speeds, 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher, puts additional strain on tires. Sustained high-speed driving causes excessive heat buildup and can cause sudden tire failure. This could cause a crash, and you or others could be killed. Some high-speed rated tires require inflation pressure

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

adjustment for high-speed operation. When speed limits and road conditions allow the vehicle to be driven at high speeds, make sure the tires are rated for high-speed operation, are in excellent condition, and are set to the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load.

Vehicles with P225/45R17 90V and 225/40R18 92V size tires require inflation pressure adjustment when driving the vehicle at speeds of 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher. Set the cold tire inflation pressure to 280 kPa (41 psi).

Vehicles with 225/40RF18 88W and 255/35RF18 90W or 255/35ZR18 (94Y) and 275/35ZR18 (99Y) size tires require inflation pressure adjustment when driving the vehicle at speeds of 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher. Set the cold tire inflation pressure to 300 kPa (44 psi).

Sustained operation at speeds over 160 km/h (100 mph) requires a load limit of the driver and one passenger, with no additional cargo. When loaded above this level, up to the GVW, do not operate the vehicle above 160 km/h (100 mph).

Return the tires to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure when high-speed driving has ended.
See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186* and *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *298*.

Tire Pressure Monitor System

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation

pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *300*.

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *364*.

Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tire pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tire and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the tires and transmit the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tire pressure warning light on the instrument cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186*.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tire displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC). The low tire pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tire pressure levels can be viewed. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *134*.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and needs to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label, attached to your vehicle, shows the size of the original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for the tires when they are cold. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186*, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location. Also see *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *298*.

The TPMS can warn about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *303*, *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *303* and *Tires* ⇨ *290*.

Caution

Tire sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tire sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tire sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM approved tire sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.

Factory-installed Tire Inflator Kits use a GM approved liquid tire sealant. Using non-approved tire sealants could damage the TPMS sensors. See *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *312* for information regarding the inflator kit materials and instructions.

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire pressure warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and DIC message should go off after the road tire is replaced and the

sensor matching process is performed successfully. See “TPMS Sensor Matching Process” later in this section.

- The TPMS sensor matching process was not done or not completed successfully after rotating the tires. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off after successfully completing the sensor matching process. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.
- Replacement tires or wheels do not match the original equipment tires or wheels. Tires and wheels other than those recommended could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tires* ⇨ *306*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly it cannot detect or signal a low tire pressure condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message comes on and stays on.

TPMS Sensor Matching Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tire/wheel position after rotating the vehicle’s tires or replacing one or more of the TPMS sensors. The TPMS sensor matching process should also be performed after replacing a spare tire with a road tire containing the TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the tire/wheel positions, using a TPMS relearn tool, in the following order: driver side front tire, passenger side front tire, passenger side rear tire, and driver side rear. See your dealer for service or to purchase a relearn tool. A TPMS relearn tool can also be purchased. See Tire Pressure Monitor Sensor Activation Tool at www.gmtoolsandequipment.com or call 1-800-GM TOOLS (1-800-468-6657).

There are two minutes to match the first tire/wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four tire/wheel positions. If it takes longer, the matching process stops and must be restarted.

The TPMS sensor matching process is:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Place the vehicle in Service Mode. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *190*.
3. Make sure the Tire Pressure info display option is turned on. The info displays on the DIC can be turned on and off through the Options menu. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *134*.

4. Use the five-way DIC control on the right side of the steering wheel to scroll to the Tire Pressure screen under the DIC info page. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *134*.
5. Press and hold SEL in the center of the five-way DIC control.

   The horn sounds twice to signal the receiver is in relearn mode and the TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message displays on the DIC screen.
6. Start with the driver side front tire.
7. Place the relearn tool against the tire sidewall, near the valve stem. Then press the button to activate the TPMS sensor. A horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this tire and wheel position.
8. Proceed to the passenger side front tire, and repeat Step 7.
9. Proceed to the passenger side rear tire, and repeat Step 7.
10. Proceed to the driver side rear tire, and repeat Step 7. The horn sounds two times to indicate the sensor identification code has been matched to the driver side rear tire, and the TPMS sensor matching process is no longer active. The TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message on the DIC display screen goes off.
11. Turn the vehicle off.
12. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information label.

Tire Inspection

We recommend that the tires, including the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, be inspected for signs of wear or damage at least once a month.

Replace the tire if:

- The indicators at three or more places around the tire can be seen.
- There is cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

Tire Rotation

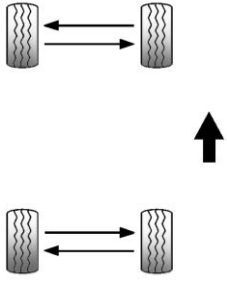
If the vehicle has non-directional tires, they should be rotated every 12 000 km/7,500 mi. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *336*.

Tires are rotated to achieve a uniform wear for all tires. The first rotation is the most important.

Anytime unusual wear is noticed, rotate the tires as soon as possible, check for proper tire inflation pressure, and check for damaged tires or wheels. If the

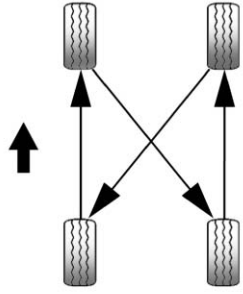
unusual wear continues after the rotation, check the wheel alignment.
See *When It Is Time for New Tires* ⇨ *305* and *Wheel Replacement* ⇨ *309*.

Directional tires should not be rotated. Each tire and wheel should be used only in the position it is in. Directional tires will have an arrow on the tire indicating the proper direction of rotation or will have “left” or “right” molded on the sidewall.



Use this rotation pattern if the vehicle has different size tires on the front and rear and they are non-directional.

Different tire sizes should not be rotated front to rear.



Use this rotation pattern when rotating tires of the same size installed on all four wheel positions.

If the vehicle has a compact spare tire, do not include it in the tire rotation.

Adjust the front and rear tires to the recommended inflation pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label after the tires have been rotated.
See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *298* and *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186*.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor System. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *300*.

Check that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *350*.

⚠ Warning

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel

(Continued)

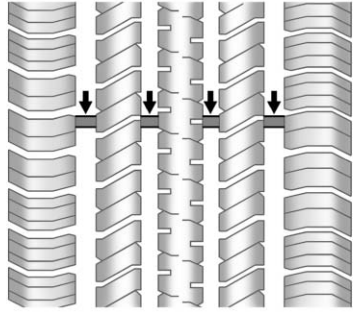
Warning (Continued)

can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

Lightly coat the center of the wheel hub with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tire rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up. Do not get grease on the flat wheel mounting surface or on the wheel nuts or bolts.

When It Is Time for New Tires

Factors such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions affect the wear rate of the tires.



Treadwear indicators are one way to tell when it is time for new tires. Treadwear indicators appear when the tires have only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) or less of tread remaining.
See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *303* and *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *303*.

The rubber in tires ages over time. This also applies to the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, even if it is never used. Multiple factors including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance affect how fast aging takes place. GM recommends that tires, including the spare if equipped, be replaced after six years, regardless of tread wear. The tire manufacture date is the last four digits of the DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN) which is molded into one side of the tire sidewall. The first two digits represent the week (01–52) and the last two digits, the year. For example, the third week of the year 2010 would have a four-digit DOT date of 0310.

Vehicle Storage

Tires age when stored normally mounted on a parked vehicle. Park a vehicle that will be stored for at least a month in a cool, dry, clean area away from direct sunlight to slow aging. This area should be free of grease, gasoline, or other substances that can deteriorate rubber.

Parking for an extended period can cause flat spots on the tires that may result in vibrations while driving. When storing a vehicle for at least a month, remove the tires or raise the vehicle to reduce the weight from the tires.

Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for the vehicle. The original equipment tires installed were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) system rating. When replacement tires are needed, GM strongly recommends buying tires with the same TPC Spec rating.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of the vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall near the tire size. If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC Spec number will be followed by MS for mud and snow. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling* ⇨ *293*, for additional information.

GM recommends replacing worn tires in complete sets of four. Uniform tread depth on all tires will help to maintain the performance of the vehicle. Braking and handling performance may be adversely affected if all the tires are not replaced at the same time. If proper rotation and maintenance have been done, all four tires should wear out at about the same time. See *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *303* for information on proper tire rotation. However, if it is necessary to replace only one axle set of worn tires, place the new tires on the rear axle.

Winter tires with the same speed rating as the original equipment tires may not be available for H, V, W, and ZR speed rated tires. Never exceed the winter tire's maximum speed capability when using winter tires with a lower speed rating.

⚠ Warning

Tires could explode during improper service. Attempting to mount or dismount a tire could cause injury or death. Only your dealer or authorized tire service center should mount or dismount the tires.

⚠ Warning

Mixing tires of different sizes (other than those originally installed on the vehicle), brands, or types may cause loss of control of the vehicle, resulting in a crash or other vehicle damage. Use the correct size, brand, and type of tire on all four wheels.

⚠ Warning

Using bias-ply tires on the vehicle may cause the wheel rim flanges to develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly and cause a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on the vehicle.

If the vehicle tires must be replaced with a tire that does not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction (radial) as the original tires.

Vehicles that have a tire pressure monitoring system could give an inaccurate low-pressure warning if non-TPC Spec rated tires are installed. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *300*.

The Tire and Loading Information label indicates the original equipment tires on the vehicle. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186*.

Different Size Tires and Wheels

If wheels or tires are installed that are a different size than the original equipment wheels and tires, vehicle performance, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover may be affected. If the vehicle has electronic systems such as antilock brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, electronic stability control, or All-Wheel Drive, the performance of these systems can also be affected.

⚠ Warning

If different sized wheels are used, there may not be an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. This increases

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

the chance of a crash and serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems developed for the vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See *Buying New Tires* ⇨ *306* and *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *252*.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance. This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States. The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG)

system does not apply to deep tread, winter tires, compact spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

All Passenger Car Tires Must Conform to Federal Safety Requirements In Addition To These Grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance. Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the

Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.
Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels were aligned and balanced at the factory to provide the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing are not necessary on a regular basis. Consider an alignment check if there is unusual tire wear or the vehicle is significantly pulling to one side or the other. Some slight pull to the left or right, depending on the crown of the road and/or other road surface variations such as troughs or ruts, is normal.
If the vehicle is vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tires and wheels may need to be rebalanced. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it. Some aluminum wheels can be repaired. See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel that is needed.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, and offset, and should be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

Replace wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, or Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors with new GM original equipment parts.

⚠ Warning

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of the vehicle. Tires can lose air, and cause loss of control, causing a crash. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

Caution

The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire clearance to the body and chassis.

⚠ Warning

Never use oil or grease on studs or the threads of the wheel nuts. The wheel nuts might come loose and the wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

⚠ Warning

Incorrect wheel nuts or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to become loose and even come off. This could lead to a crash. Be sure to use the correct wheel nuts. If you have to replace them, be sure to get new GM original equipment wheel nuts.

Caution

Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification.

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ Warning

Replacing a wheel with a used one is dangerous. How it has been used or how far it has been driven may be unknown. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. When replacing wheels, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

Tire Chains

⚠ Warning

If the vehicle has 225/40R18, 225/40RF18, 255/35RF18, 225/35R19, or 255/30R19 size tires, do not use tire chains. There is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause loss of control and a crash. Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for the vehicle's tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To avoid vehicle damage, drive slow and readjust or remove the traction device if it contacts the vehicle. Do not spin the wheels. If traction devices are used, install them on the rear tires.

Caution

If the vehicle is equipped with a tire size other than 225/40R18, 225/40RF18, 255/35RF18, 225/35R19, or 255/30R19, use tire chains only where legal and only when necessary. Use low profile chains that add no more than 12 mm thickness to the tire tread and inner sidewall. Use chains that are the proper size for the tires. Install them on the tires of the rear axle. Don't use chains on the tires of the front axle. Tighten them as tightly as possible with the ends securely fastened. Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions. If the chains contact the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage the vehicle.

If a Tire Goes Flat

If the vehicle has run-flat tires, there is no need to stop on the side of the road to change a flat tire. See *Run-Flat Tires* ⇨ *292*.

⚠ Warning

Special tools and procedures are required to service a run-flat tire. If these special tools and procedures are not used, injury or vehicle damage may occur. Always be sure the proper tools and procedures, as described in the service manual, are used.

It is unusual for a tire to blow out while driving, especially if the tires are maintained properly. See *Tires* ⇨ *290*. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if there is ever a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction as used in a skid. Stop pressing the accelerator pedal and steer to straighten the vehicle. It may be very bumpy and noisy. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

⚠ Warning

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

If this vehicle does not have run-flat tires and a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place, well off the road, if possible.

1. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *153*.
2. Set the parking brake firmly.
3. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First) or R (Reverse).
4. Turn off the ignition.
5. Inspect the flat tire.

⚠ Warning

Driving on a flat tire will cause permanent damage to the tire. Re-inflating a tire after it has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat may cause a blowout and a serious crash. Never attempt to re-inflate a tire that has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat. Have your dealer or an authorized tire service center repair or replace the flat tire as soon as possible.

If this vehicle has a tire sealant kit and the tire has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a puncture larger than 6 mm (0.25 in), the tire is too severely damaged for the tire sealant and compressor kit to be effective. If the tire has a puncture less than 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area of the tire, see *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *312*.

Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit

⚠ Warning

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *198*.

⚠ Warning

Overinflating a tire could cause the tire to rupture and you or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the tire sealant and compressor kit instructions and inflate the tire to its recommended pressure. Do not exceed the recommended pressure.

⚠ Warning

Storing the tire sealant and compressor kit or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store the tire sealant and compressor kit in its original location.

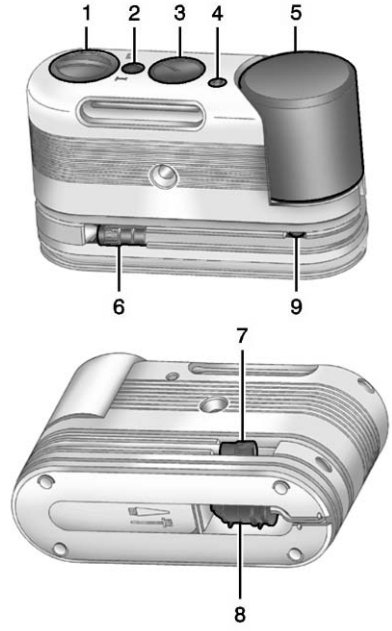
If this vehicle has a tire sealant and compressor kit, there may not be a spare tire or tire changing equipment, and on some vehicles there may not be a place to store a tire.

The tire sealant and compressor can be used to temporarily seal punctures up to 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area of the tire. It can also be used to inflate an underinflated tire.

If the tire has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a large puncture, the tire is too severely damaged for the tire sealant and compressor kit to be effective. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *358*.

Read and follow all of the tire sealant and compressor kit instructions.

The kit includes:



1. Selector Switch (Sealant/Air or Air Only)
2. On/Off Button
3. Pressure Gauge

4. Pressure Deflation Button
5. Tire Sealant Canister
6. Sealant/Air Hose (Clear)
7. Air Only Hose (Black)
8. Power Plug
9. Canister Release Button (Under Sealant/Air Hose)

Tire Sealant

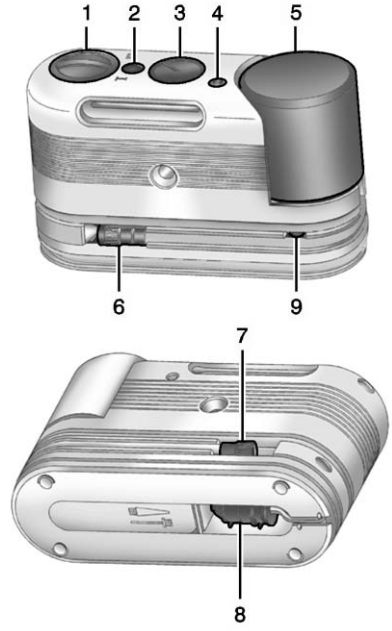
Read and follow the safe handling instructions on the label adhered to the sealant canister.

Check the tire sealant expiration date on the sealant canister. The sealant canister should be replaced before its expiration date. Replacement sealant canisters are available at your local dealer. See “Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister” following.

There is only enough sealant to seal one tire. After usage, the sealant canister and sealant/air hose assembly must be replaced. See “Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister” following.

Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit to Temporarily Seal and Inflate a Punctured Tire

Follow the directions closely for correct sealant usage.



1. Selector Switch (Sealant/Air or Air Only)
2. On/Off Button
3. Pressure Gauge

4. Pressure Deflation Button
5. Tire Sealant Canister
6. Sealant/Air Hose (Clear)
7. Air Only Hose (Black)
8. Power Plug
9. Canister Release Button (Under Sealant/Air Hose)

When using the tire sealant and compressor kit during cold temperatures, warm the kit in a heated environment for five minutes. This will help to inflate the tire faster.

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *153*.

See *If a Tire Goes Flat* ⇨ *311* for other important safety warnings.

Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tire.

1. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. See *Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *319*.
2. Unwrap the sealant/air hose (6) and the power plug (8).
3. Place the kit on the ground.

   Make sure the tire valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Attach the sealant/air hose (6) onto the tire valve stem. Turn it clockwise until it is tight.
6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *114*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.
7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Press and turn the selector switch (1) counterclockwise to the Sealant + Air position.
9. Press the on/off button (2) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit on.

   The compressor will inject sealant and air into the tire.

   The pressure gauge (3) will initially show a high pressure while the compressor pushes the sealant into the tire. Once the sealant is completely dispersed into the tire, the pressure will quickly drop and start to rise again as the tire inflates with air only.
10. Inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (3). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *298*.

    The pressure gauge (3) may read higher than the actual tire pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to

get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

Caution

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven farther. The tire is too severely damaged and the tire sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tire. Remove the power plug from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tire valve. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *358*.

11. Press the on/off button (2) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit off.

    The tire is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the tire, therefore, Steps 12–18 must be done immediately after Step 11.

    Be careful while handling the tire sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

12. Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.

13. Turn the sealant/air hose (6) counterclockwise to remove it from the tire valve stem.

14. Replace the tire valve stem cap.

15. Replace the sealant/air hose (6), and the power plug (8) back in their original location.

16. If the flat tire was able to inflate to the recommended inflation pressure, remove the maximum speed label from the sealant canister (5) and place it in a highly visible location. Do not exceed the speed on this label until the damaged tire is repaired or replaced.

17. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.

18. Immediately drive the vehicle 8 km (5 mi) to distribute the sealant in the tire.

19. Stop at a safe location and check the tire pressure. Refer to Steps 1–11 under “Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tire (Not Punctured).”

    If the tire pressure has fallen more than 68 kPa (10 psi) below the recommended inflation pressure, stop driving the vehicle. The tire is too severely damaged and the tire sealant cannot seal the tire. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *358*.

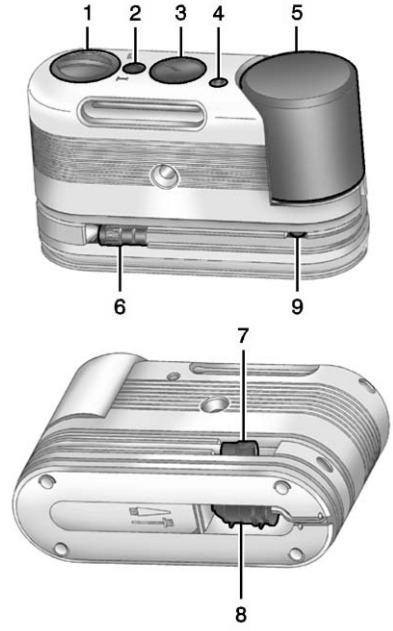
    If the tire pressure has not dropped more than 68 kPa (10 psi) from the recommended

inflation pressure, inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure.

20. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tire, and vehicle.
21. Dispose of the used sealant canister (5) and sealant/air hose (6) assembly at a local dealer or in accordance with local state codes and practices.
22. Replace with a new canister assembly available from your dealer.
23. After temporarily sealing the tire using the tire sealant and compressor kit, take the vehicle to an authorized dealer within 161 km (100 mi) of driving to have the tire repaired or replaced.

Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tire (Not Punctured)

To use the air compressor to inflate a tire with air only and not sealant:



1. Selector Switch (Sealant/Air or Air Only)
2. On/Off Button
3. Pressure Gauge
4. Pressure Deflation Button
5. Tire Sealant Canister
6. Sealant/Air Hose (Clear)
7. Air Only Hose (Black)
8. Power Plug
9. Canister Release Button (Under Sealant/Air Hose)

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *153*.

See *If a Tire Goes Flat* ⇨ *311* for other important safety warnings.

1. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. See *Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *319*.
2. Unwrap the air only hose (7) and the power plug (8).
3. Place the kit on the ground.

   Make sure the tire valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the tire valve stem cap from the flat tire by turning it counterclockwise.

5. Attach the air only hose (7) onto the tire valve stem by turning it clockwise until it is tight.
6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *114*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

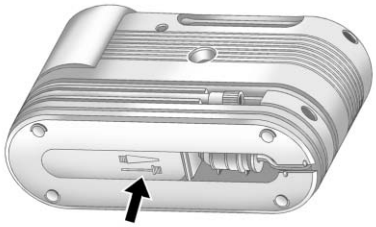
   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.
7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Press and turn the selector switch (1) clockwise to the Air Only position.
9. Press the on/off button (2) to turn the compressor on.

   The compressor will inflate the tire with air only.
10. Inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (3). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *298*.

    The pressure gauge (3) may read higher than the actual tire pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

    If you inflate the tire higher than the recommended pressure you can adjust the excess pressure by pressing the pressure deflation button (4) until the proper pressure reading is reached. This option is only functional when using the air only hose (7).
11. Press the on/off button (2) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit off.

    Be careful while handling the tire sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.
12. Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
13. Disconnect the air only hose (7) from the tire valve stem, by turning it counterclockwise, and replace the tire valve stem cap.
14. Replace the air only hose (7) and the power plug (8) and cord back in its original location.
15. Place the equipment in the original storage location in the vehicle.



The tire sealant and compressor kit has an accessory adapter located in a compartment on the bottom of its housing that may be used to inflate air mattresses, balls, etc.

Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister

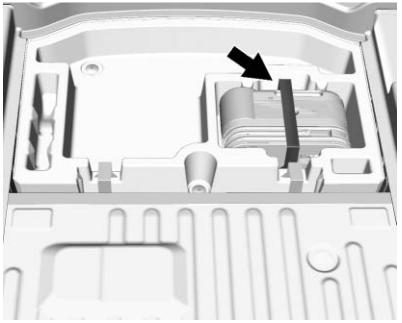
To remove the sealant canister:

1. Unwrap the sealant hose.
2. Press the canister release button (9).
3. Pull up and remove the canister.
4. Replace with a new canister which is available from your dealer.
5. Push the new canister into place.

Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit

To access the tire sealant and compressor kit:

1. Open the trunk. See *Trunk* ⇨ *43*.
2. Lift the cover.



3. Remove the strap.
4. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit.

To store the tire sealant and compressor kit, reverse the steps.

Jump Starting

Jump Starting - North America

For more information about the vehicle battery, see *Battery - North America* ⇨ *273*.

If the battery has run down, try to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ Warning

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. **WASH HANDS AFTER HANDLING.** For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

See *California Proposition 65 Warning* ⇨ *251* and the back cover.

⚠ Warning

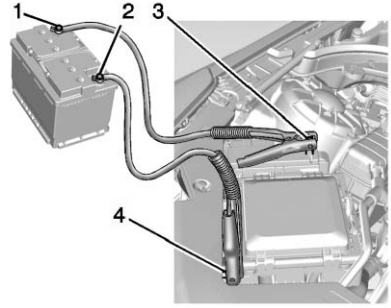
Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Caution

Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.



1. Good Battery Positive Post
2. Good Battery Negative Post
3. Discharged Battery Positive Post
4. Discharged Battery Negative Grounding Point

The jump start positive post (1) and negative post (2) are on the battery of the vehicle providing the jump start.

The jump start positive post (3) and the negative grounding point (4) for the discharged battery are on the passenger side of the vehicle.

The positive jump start connection for the discharged battery is under a red cover. Remove the cover to expose the terminal.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Caution

If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting.

2. Position the two vehicles so that they are not touching.
3. Set the parking brake firmly and put the shift lever in P (Park) with an automatic transmission, or Neutral with a manual transmission. See *Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission)* ⇨ *195* with an automatic transmission, or *Parking (Manual Transmission)* ⇨ *197* with a manual transmission.

Caution

If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting.

4. Turn the ignition off. Turn off all lights and accessories in both vehicles, except the hazard warning flashers if needed.

⚠ Warning

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ Warning

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Connect one end of the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.

6. Connect the other end of the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery.
7. Connect one end of the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal of the good battery.
8. Connect the other end of the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) grounding point for the discharged battery.
9. Start the engine in the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine at idle speed for at least four minutes.
10. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Caution

If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.

Jumper Cable Removal

Reverse the sequence exactly when removing the jumper cables.

After starting the disabled vehicle and removing the jumper cables, allow it to idle for several minutes.

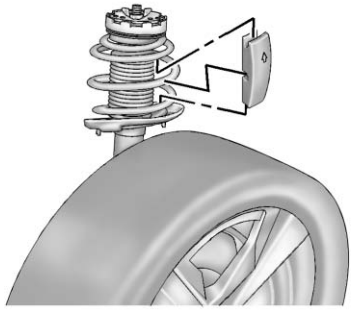
Towing the Vehicle

Caution

Incorrectly towing a disabled vehicle may cause damage. The damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Do not lash or hook to suspension components. Use the proper straps around the tires to secure the vehicle.

Use only a flatbed tow truck for towing a disabled vehicle. Never use a sling type lift or damage will occur. Use ramps to help reduce approach angles if necessary. A towed vehicle should have its drive wheels off the ground. Consult a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed.



Due to low ramp angles on the V-Series only, use care when loading the vehicle onto a flatbed carrier. Front spring spacers were provided for lifting the front suspension if more clearance is necessary when towing.

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed.

Front Tow Eye

Caution

Improper use of the tow eye can cause vehicle damage. Use caution and low speeds to prevent damage to the vehicle.

If the vehicle is equipped with tow eye, only use the tow eye to pull the vehicle onto a flatbed car carrier from a flat road surface. Do not use the tow eye to pull the vehicle from snow, mud or sand. The tow eye is located underneath the load floor, near the spare tire or the compressor kit, if equipped.

Carefully open the cover in the fascia by using the small notch that conceals the tow eye socket.

Install the tow eye into the socket and turn it until it is fully tightened. When the tow eye is removed, reinstall the cover with the notch in the original position.

Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing the vehicle behind another vehicle, such as behind a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as dinghy towing and dolly towing. Dinghy towing is towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground. Dolly towing is towing the vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a dolly.

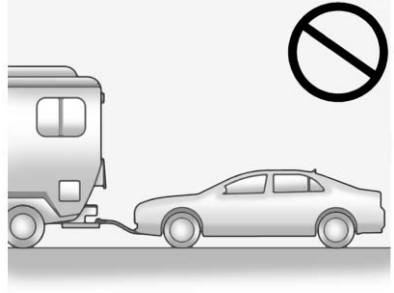
Here are some important things to consider before recreational vehicle towing:

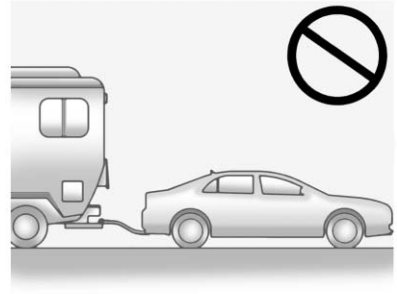
- What is the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure to read the tow vehicle manufacturer's recommendations.
- What is the distance that will be traveled? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Is the proper towing equipment going to be used? See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is the vehicle ready to be towed? Just as preparing the vehicle for a long trip, make sure the vehicle is prepared to be towed.

Caution

Use of a shield mounted in front of the vehicle grille could restrict airflow and cause damage to the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If using a shield, only use one that attaches to the towing vehicle.

Dinghy Towing





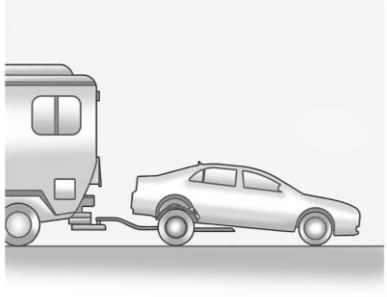
Caution

If the vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the drivetrain components could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not tow the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground.

The vehicle was not designed to be towed with all four wheels on the ground. If a rear-wheel-drive vehicle must be towed, a dolly or a trailer should be used. If an all-wheel-drive

vehicle must be towed, a trailer should be used. See the information on dolly towing.

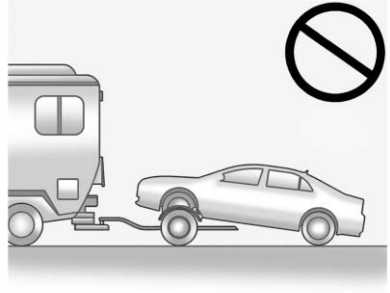
Dolly Towing (Rear-Wheel-Drive Vehicles)

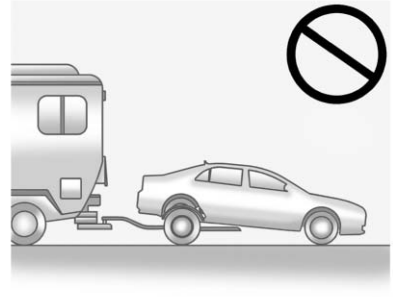


To dolly tow a rear-wheel-drive vehicle from the rear:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Put the rear wheels on the dolly.
3. Firmly set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *206* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *208*.
4. Put the vehicle in P (Park).
5. Securely attach the vehicle being towed to the dolly.
6. Clamp the steering wheel in a straight-ahead position with a clamping device designed for towing.
7. Turn the ignition off.

Dolly Towing (All-Wheel-Drive Vehicles)





Caution

Towing an all-wheel-drive vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, or even with only two of its wheels on the ground, will damage drivetrain components. Do not tow an all-wheel-drive vehicle with any of its wheels on the ground.

All-wheel-drive vehicles can only be towed with all four wheels on a trailer.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Locks

Locks are lubricated at the factory. Use a de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, and have the locks greased after using. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *345*.

Washing the Vehicle

To preserve the vehicle's finish, wash it often and out of direct sunlight.

Caution

Do not use petroleum-based, acidic, or abrasive cleaning agents as they can damage the vehicle's paint, metal, or plastic parts. If damage occurs, it would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer. Follow all manufacturer directions regarding

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

correct product usage, necessary safety precautions, and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

Caution

Avoid using high-pressure washes closer than 30 cm (12 in) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8,274 kPa (1,200 psi) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

Caution

Do not power wash any component under the hood that has this symbol.

This could cause damage that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

If using an automatic car wash, follow the car wash instructions. The windshield wiper and rear window wiper, if equipped, must be off. Remove any accessories that may be damaged or interfere with the car wash equipment.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after, to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

Finish Care

Application of aftermarket clearcoat sealant/wax materials is not recommended. If painted surfaces are damaged, see your dealer to have the damage assessed and repaired. Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as

soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Occasional hand waxing or mild polishing should be done to remove residue from the paint finish. See your dealer for approved cleaning products.

Do not apply waxes or polishes to uncoated plastic, vinyl, rubber, decals, simulated wood, or flat paint as damage can occur.

Caution

Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.

To keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Carbon Fiber Care

Carbon fiber composite parts can be washed and waxed like any other parts. Use a clear or black pigmented wax. See *Composite Materials* ⇨ *190*.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Moldings

Caution

Failure to clean and protect the bright metal moldings can result in a hazy white finish or pitting. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

The bright metal moldings on the vehicle are aluminum, chrome or stainless steel. To prevent damage always follow these cleaning instructions:

- Be sure the molding is cool to the touch before applying any cleaning solution.
- Use only approved cleaning solutions for aluminum, chrome or stainless steel. Some cleaners are highly acidic or contain alkaline substances and can damage the moldings.
- Always dilute a concentrated cleaner according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Do not use cleaners that are not intended for automotive use.
- Use a nonabrasive wax on the vehicle after washing to protect and extend the molding finish.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses, Emblems, Decals, and Stripes

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth, and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps, lenses, emblems, decals, and stripes. Follow instructions under "Washing the Vehicle" previously in this section.

Lamp covers are made of plastic, and some have a UV protective coating. Do not clean or wipe them when dry.

Do not use any of the following on lamp covers:

- Abrasive or caustic agents.

- Washer fluids and other cleaning agents in higher concentrations than suggested by the manufacturer.
- Solvents, alcohols, fuels, or other harsh cleaners.
- Ice scrapers or other hard items.
- Aftermarket appearance caps or covers while the lamps are illuminated, due to excessive heat generated.

Caution

Failure to clean lamps properly can cause damage to the lamp cover that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Caution

Using wax on low gloss black finish stripes can increase the gloss level and create a non-uniform finish. Clean low gloss stripes with soap and water only.

Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the hood and windshield, when washing the vehicle.

Windshield and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield with glass cleaner.

Clean rubber blades using a lint-free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap, and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking.

Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged. Damage can be caused by extreme dusty conditions, sand, salt, heat, sun, snow, and ice.

Weatherstrips

Apply weatherstrip lubricant on weatherstrips to make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Lubricate weatherstrips at least once a year. Hot, dry climates may require more frequent application. Black marks from rubber material on painted surfaces can be removed by rubbing with a clean cloth. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *345*.

Tires

Use a stiff brush with tire cleaner to clean the tires.

Caution

Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.

Wheels and Trim — Aluminum or Chrome

Use a soft, clean cloth with mild soap and water to clean the wheels. After rinsing thoroughly with clean water, dry with a soft, clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Caution

Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium, or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash the chrome with soap and water after exposure.

Caution

To avoid surface damage, do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. Use only approved cleaners. Also, never drive a vehicle with aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

brushes. Damage could occur and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Brake System

Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect drum brake linings/shoes for wear or cracks. Inspect all other brake parts.

Steering, Suspension, and Chassis Components

Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear at least once a year.

Inspect power steering for proper attachment, connections, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc.

Visually check constant velocity joint boots and axle seals for leaks.

Body Component Lubrication

Lubricate all key lock cylinders, hood hinges, liftgate hinges, and the steel fuel door hinge, unless the components are plastic. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.

Underbody Maintenance

At least twice a year, spring and fall, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to thoroughly clean any areas where mud and other debris can collect.

Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

Finish Damage

Quickly repair minor chips and scratches with touch-up materials available from your dealer to avoid corrosion. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted vehicle surfaces causing blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface. See “Finish Care” previously in this section.

Interior Care

To prevent dirt particle abrasions, regularly clean the vehicle's interior. Immediately remove any soils. Newspapers or dark garments can transfer color to the vehicle’s interior.

Use a soft bristle brush to remove dust from knobs and crevices on the instrument cluster. Using a mild soap solution, immediately remove hand lotions, sunscreen, and insect repellent from all interior surfaces or permanent damage may result.

Use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned to prevent permanent damage. Apply all cleaners directly to the cleaning cloth. Do not spray cleaners on any switches or controls. Remove cleaners quickly.

Before using cleaners, read and follow all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, open the doors and windows to get proper ventilation.

To prevent damage, do not clean the interior using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a razor or any other sharp object to remove soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a brush with stiff bristles.
- Never rub any surface aggressively or with too much pressure.
- Do not use laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. For liquid cleaners, use approximately 20 drops per 3.8 L (1 gal) of water. A concentrated soap solution will create streaks and attract dirt. Do not use solutions that contain strong or caustic soap.
- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery when cleaning.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners containing solvents.

Interior Glass

To clean, use a terry cloth fabric dampened with water. Wipe droplets left behind with a clean dry cloth. If necessary, use a commercial glass cleaner after cleaning with plain water.

Caution

To prevent scratching, never use abrasive cleaners on automotive glass. Abrasive cleaners or aggressive cleaning may damage the rear window defogger.

Cleaning the windshield with water during the first three to six months of ownership will reduce tendency to fog.

Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with water and mild soap.

Coated Moldings

Coated moldings should be cleaned.

- When lightly soiled, wipe with a sponge or soft, lint-free cloth dampened with water.
- When heavily soiled, use warm soapy water.

Fabric/Carpet/Suede

Start by vacuuming the surface using a soft brush attachment. If a rotating vacuum brush attachment is being used, only use it on the floor carpet. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible:

- Gently blot liquids with a paper towel. Continue blotting until no more soil can be removed.
- For solid soils, remove as much as possible prior to vacuuming.

To clean:

1. Saturate a clean, lint-free colorfast cloth with water. Microfiber cloth is recommended to prevent lint transfer to the fabric or carpet.
2. Remove excess moisture by gently wringing until water does not drip from the cleaning cloth.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Fold the cleaning cloth to a clean area frequently to prevent forcing the soil in to the fabric.
4. Continue gently rubbing the soiled area until there is no longer any color transfer from the soil to the cleaning cloth.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution followed only by plain water.

If the soil is not completely removed, it may be necessary to use a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. Test a small hidden area for colorfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If ring formation occurs, clean the entire fabric or carpet.

After cleaning, use a paper towel to blot excess moisture.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

Use a microfiber cloth on high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays. First, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that can scratch the surface. Then gently clean by rubbing with a microfiber cloth. Never use window cleaners or

solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfiber cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Caution

Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Instrument Panel, Leather, Vinyl, Other Plastic Surfaces, Low Gloss Paint Surfaces, and Natural Open Pore Wood Surfaces

Use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For a more thorough cleaning, use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with a mild soap solution.

Caution

Soaking or saturating leather, especially perforated leather, as well as other interior surfaces, may cause permanent damage. Wipe excess moisture from these surfaces after cleaning and allow them to dry naturally. Never use heat, steam, or spot removers. Do not use cleaners that contain silicone or wax-based products. Cleaners containing these solvents can permanently change the appearance and feel of leather or soft trim, and are not recommended.

Do not use cleaners that increase gloss, especially on the instrument panel. Reflected glare can decrease visibility through the windshield under certain conditions.

Caution

Use of air fresheners may cause permanent damage to plastics and painted surfaces. If an air freshener comes in contact with any plastic or painted surface in the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution. Damage caused by air fresheners would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Cargo Cover and Convenience Net

Wash with warm water and mild detergent. Do not use chlorine bleach. Rinse with cold water, and then dry completely.

Care of Seat Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ Warning

Do not bleach or dye seat belt webbing. It may severely weaken the webbing. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean and rinse seat belt webbing only with mild soap and lukewarm water. Allow the webbing to dry.

Floor Mats

⚠ Warning

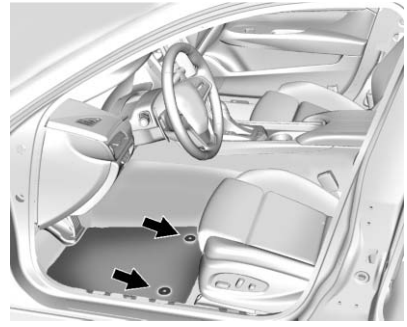
If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the pedals. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that GM certified floor mats be purchased. Non-GM floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the pedals. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.
- Do not use a floor mat if the vehicle is not equipped with a floor mat retainer on the driver side floor.
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

The floor mats are held in place by button-type retainers.

Removing and Replacing the Floor Mats



1. Pull up on the rear of the floor mat to unlock the retainers and remove.
2. Reinstall by lining up the floor mat retainer openings over the carpet retainers and snap into position.
3. Make sure the floor mat is properly secured in place. Verify the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Service and Maintenance

General Information
General Information 334

Cadillac Premium Care Maintenance
Cadillac Premium Care Maintenance 336

Maintenance Schedule
Maintenance Schedule 336

Special Application Services
Special Application Services 341

Additional Maintenance and Care
Additional Maintenance and Care 342

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 345
Maintenance Replacement Parts 346

Maintenance Records
Maintenance Records 348

General Information

Your vehicle is an important investment. This section describes the required maintenance for the vehicle. Follow this schedule to help protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance. It may also help to maintain the value of the vehicle if it is sold. It is the responsibility of the owner to have all required maintenance performed.

Your dealer has trained technicians who can perform required maintenance using genuine replacement parts. They have up-to-date tools and equipment for fast and accurate diagnostics. Many dealers have extended evening and Saturday hours, courtesy transportation, and online scheduling to assist with service needs.

Your dealer recognizes the importance of providing competitively priced maintenance and repair services. With trained technicians, the dealer is the place for routine maintenance such as oil changes and tire rotations and

additional maintenance items like tires, brakes, batteries, and wiper blades.

Caution

Damage caused by improper maintenance can lead to costly repairs and may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, recommended fluids, and lubricants are important to keep the vehicle in good working condition.

Do not have chemical flushes that are not approved by GM performed on the vehicle. The use of flushes, solvents, cleaners, or lubricants that are not approved by GM could damage the vehicle, requiring expensive repairs that are not covered by the vehicle warranty.

The Tire Rotation and Required Services are the responsibility of the vehicle owner. It is recommended to have your dealer perform these services every 12 000 km/7,500 mi.

Proper vehicle maintenance helps to keep the vehicle in good working condition, improves fuel economy, and reduces vehicle emissions.

Because of the way people use vehicles, maintenance needs vary. There may need to be more frequent checks and services. The Additional Required Services - Normal are for vehicles that:

- Carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *186*.
- Are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- Use the recommended fuel. See *Fuel* ⇨ *240*.

Refer to the information in the Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Normal chart.

The Additional Required Services - Severe are for vehicles that are:

- Mainly driven in heavy city traffic in hot weather
- Mainly driven in hilly or mountainous terrain
- Frequently towing a trailer
- Used for high speed or competitive driving
- Used for taxi, police, or delivery service

Refer to the information in the Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Severe chart.

⚠ Warning

Performing maintenance work can be dangerous and can cause serious injury. Perform maintenance work only if the required information, proper tools, and equipment are available. If they are not, see your dealer to have a trained technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work* ⇨ *252*.

Cadillac Premium Care Maintenance

This vehicle comes with Cadillac Premium Care Maintenance. It is a maintenance program that covers select routine maintenance services when scheduled in accordance with the owner's manual, including:

- Oil changes based on the vehicle's oil life monitor system.
- Tire rotation every 12 000 km (7,500 mi).
- Engine air cleaner filter replacement. (ATS-V Only)
- Passenger compartment air filter replacement.
- Multi-point vehicle inspection (MPVI) performed by a qualified technician.

Cadillac requires that all Cadillac Premium Care Maintenance services be performed by a Cadillac authorized service dealer.

Maintenance Schedule

Owner Checks and Services

At Each Fuel Stop

- Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.

Once a Month

- Check the tire inflation pressures. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *298*.
- Inspect the tires for wear. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *303*.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *271*.

Engine Oil Change

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message displays, have the engine oil and filter changed within the next 1 000 km/600 mi. If driven under the best conditions, the engine oil life system may not indicate the need for vehicle service for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and the oil life system must be reset. Your trained dealer technician can perform this work. If the engine oil life system is reset accidentally, service the vehicle within 5 000 km/3,000 mi since the last service. Reset the oil life system when the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *261*.

Tire Rotation and Required Services Every 12 000 km/ 7,500 mi

Rotate the tires, if recommended for the vehicle, and perform the following services. See *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *303*.

- Check engine oil level and oil life percentage. If needed, change engine oil and filter, and reset oil life system.
  See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259* and *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *261*.
- Check engine coolant level.
  See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *265* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *269*.
- Check windshield washer fluid level. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *271*.

- Visually inspect windshield wiper blades for wear, cracking, or contamination. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *326*. Replace worn or damaged wiper blades. See *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ *276*.
- Check tire inflation pressures. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *298*.
- Inspect tire wear. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *303*.
- Visually check for fluid leaks.
- Inspect engine air cleaner filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *264*.
- Inspect brake system. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *326*.
- Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *326*.
- Check restraint system components. See *Safety System Check* ⇨ *75*.
- Visually inspect fuel system for damage or leaks.
- Visually inspect exhaust system and nearby heat shields for loose or damaged parts.
- Lubricate body components. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *326*.
- Check starter switch. See *Starter Switch Check* ⇨ *275*.
- Check automatic transmission shift lock control function. See *Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check* ⇨ *276*.
- Check parking brake and automatic transmission park mechanism. See *Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check* ⇨ *276*.
- Check accelerator pedal for damage, high effort, or binding. Replace if needed.
- Visually inspect gas strut for signs of wear, cracks, or other damage. Check the hold open ability of the strut. If the hold open ability is low, service the gas strut. See *Gas Strut(s)* ⇨ *277*.
- Check tire sealant expiration date, if equipped. See *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *312*.
- Inspect sunroof track and seal, if equipped. See *Sunroof* ⇨ *52*.

Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Normal	**12 000 km/7,500 mi**	**24 000 km/15,000 mi**	**36 000 km/22,500 mi**	**48 000 km/30,000 mi**	**60 000 km/37,500 mi**	**72 000 km/45,000 mi**	**84 000 km/52,500 mi**	**96 000 km/60,000 mi**	**108 000 km/67,500 mi**	**120 000 km/75,000 mi**	**132 000 km/82,500 mi**	**144 000 km/90,000 mi**	**156 000 km/97,500 mi**	**168 000 km/105,000 mi**	**180 000 km/112,500 mi**	**192 000 km/120,000 mi**	**204 000 km/127,500 mi**	**216 000 km/135,000 mi**	**228 000 km/142,500 mi**	**240 000 km/150,000 mi**
Rotate tires and perform Required Services. Check engine oil level and oil life percentage. Change engine oil and filter, if needed.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace passenger compartment air filter. (1)			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓		
Inspect evaporative control system. (2)						✓						✓						✓		
ATS-V Only: Replace engine air cleaner filter. (3)			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓		
Except ATS-V: Replace engine air cleaner filter. (3)						✓						✓						✓		
Change transfer case fluid, if equipped with AWD. (4)													✓							
Change rear axle fluid, if equipped with limited slip differential. (4)						✓						✓						✓		
Change rear axle fluid, without limited slip differential. (4)																				✓
2.0L or 3.6L Twin Turbo Engine Only: Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires.								✓								✓				
3.6L V6 Engine Only: Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires.													✓							
Drain and fill engine cooling system. (5)																				✓
Visually inspect accessory drive belts. (6)																				✓
Replace brake fluid, if equipped with an automatic transmission. (7)																				
Replace brake/clutch fluid, if equipped with a manual transmission. (8)																				

Footnotes — Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Normal

(1) Or every two years, whichever comes first. More frequent passenger compartment air filter replacement may be needed if driving in areas with heavy traffic, poor air quality, high dust levels, or environmental allergens. Passenger compartment air filter replacement may also be needed if there is reduced airflow, window fogging, or odors. Your GM dealer can help determine when to replace the filter.

(2) Visually check all fuel and vapor lines and hoses for proper attachment, connection, routing, and condition.

(3) Or every four years, whichever comes first. If driving in dusty conditions, inspect the filter at each oil change or more often as needed.

(4) Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.

(5) Or every five years, whichever comes first.
See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *265* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *269*.

(6) Or every 10 years, whichever comes first. Inspect for fraying, excessive cracking, or damage; replace, if needed.

(7) If equipped with an automatic transmission, replace brake fluid every five years. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *272*.

(8) If equipped with a manual transmission, replace brake/clutch fluid every three years. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *272*.

Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Severe	12 000 km/7,500 mi	24 000 km/15,000 mi	36 000 km/22,500 mi	48 000 km/30,000 mi	60 000 km/37,500 mi	72 000 km/45,000 mi	84 000 km/52,500 mi	96 000 km/60,000 mi	108 000 km/67,500 mi	120 000 km/75,000 mi	132 000 km/82,500 mi	144 000 km/90,000 mi	156 000 km/97,500 mi	168 000 km/105,000 mi	180 000 km/112,500 mi	192 000 km/120,000 mi	204 000 km/127,500 mi	216 000 km/135,000 mi	228 000 km/142,500 mi	240 000 km/150,000 mi
Rotate tires and perform Required Services. Check engine oil level and oil life percentage. Change engine oil and filter, if needed.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace passenger compartment air filter. (1)			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓		
Inspect evaporative control system. (2)						✓						✓						✓		
ATS-V Only: Replace engine air cleaner filter. (3)			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓			✓		
Except ATS-V: Replace engine air cleaner filter. (3)						✓						✓						✓		
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter.						✓						✓						✓		
Change manual transmission fluid.						✓						✓						✓		
Change transfer case fluid, if equipped with AWD. (4)						✓						✓						✓		
Change rear axle fluid, if equipped with limited slip differential. (4)						✓						✓						✓		
Change rear axle fluid, without limited slip differential. (4)										✓										✓
2.0L or 3.6L Twin Turbo Engine Only: Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires.								✓								✓				
3.6L V6 Engine Only: Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires.													✓							
Drain and fill engine cooling system. (5)																				✓
Visually inspect accessory drive belts. (6)																				✓
Replace brake fluid, if equipped with an automatic transmission. (7)																				
Replace brake/clutch fluid, if equipped with a manual transmission. (8)																				

Footnotes — Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Severe

(1) Or every two years, whichever comes first. More frequent passenger compartment air filter replacement may be needed if driving in areas with heavy traffic, poor air quality, high dust levels, or environmental allergens. Passenger compartment air filter replacement may also be needed if there is reduced airflow, window fogging, or odors. Your GM dealer can help determine when to replace the filter.

(2) Visually check all fuel and vapor lines and hoses for proper attachment, connection, routing, and condition.

(3) Or every four years, whichever comes first. If driving in dusty conditions, inspect the filter at each oil change or more often as needed.

(4) Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.

(5) Or every five years, whichever comes first.
See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *265* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *269*.

(6) Or every 10 years, whichever comes first. Inspect for fraying, excessive cracking, or damage; replace, if needed.

(7) If equipped with an automatic transmission, replace brake fluid every five years. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *272*.

(8) If equipped with a manual transmission, replace brake/clutch fluid every three years. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *272*.

Special Application Services

- Severe Commercial Use Vehicles Only: Lubricate chassis components every oil change.
- Have underbody flushing service performed. See "Underbody Maintenance" in *Exterior Care* ⇨ *326*.

Additional Maintenance and Care

Your vehicle is an important investment and caring for it properly may help to avoid future costly repairs. To maintain vehicle performance, additional maintenance services may be required.

It is recommended that your dealer perform these services — their trained dealer technicians know your vehicle best. Your dealer can also perform a thorough assessment with a multi-point inspection to recommend when your vehicle may need attention.

The following list is intended to explain the services and conditions to look for that may indicate services are required.

Battery

The 12-volt battery supplies power to start the engine and operate any additional electrical accessories.

- To avoid break-down or failure to start the vehicle, maintain a battery with full cranking power.
- Trained dealer technicians have the diagnostic equipment to test the battery and ensure that the connections and cables are corrosion-free.

Belts

- Belts may need replacing if they squeak or show signs of cracking or splitting.
- Trained dealer technicians have access to tools and equipment to inspect the belts and recommend adjustment or replacement when necessary.

Brakes

Brakes stop the vehicle and are crucial to safe driving.

- Signs of brake wear may include chirping, grinding, or squealing noises, or difficulty stopping.
- Trained dealer technicians have access to tools and equipment to inspect the brakes and recommend quality parts engineered for the vehicle.

Fluids

Proper fluid levels and approved fluids protect the vehicle's systems and components. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *345* for GM approved fluids.

- Engine oil and windshield washer fluid levels should be checked at every fuel fill.
- Instrument cluster lights may come on to indicate that fluids may be low and need to be filled.

Hoses

Hoses transport fluids and should be regularly inspected to ensure that there are no cracks or leaks. With a multi-point inspection, your dealer can inspect the hoses and advise if replacement is needed.

Lamps

Properly working headlamps, taillamps, and brake lamps are important to see and be seen on the road.

- Signs that the headlamps need attention include dimming, failure to light, cracking, or damage. The brake lamps need to be checked periodically to ensure that they light when braking.
- With a multi-point inspection, your dealer can check the lamps and note any concerns.

Shocks and Struts

Shocks and struts help aid in control for a smoother ride.

- Signs of wear may include steering wheel vibration, bounce/sway while braking, longer stopping distance, or uneven tire wear.
- As part of the multi-point inspection, trained dealer technicians can visually inspect the shocks and struts for signs of leaking, blown seals, or damage, and can advise when service is needed.

Tires

Tires need to be properly inflated, rotated, and balanced. Maintaining the tires can save money and fuel, and can reduce the risk of tire failure.

- Signs that the tires need to be replaced include three or more visible treadwear indicators; cord or fabric showing through the rubber; cracks or cuts in the tread or sidewall; or a bulge or split in the tire.
- Trained dealer technicians can inspect and recommend the right tires. Your dealer can also provide tire/wheel balancing services to ensure smooth vehicle operation at all speeds. Your dealer sells and services name brand tires.

Vehicle Care

To help keep the vehicle looking like new, vehicle care products are available from your dealer. For information on how to clean and protect the vehicle's interior and exterior, see *Interior Care* ⇨ *330* and *Exterior Care* ⇨ *326*.

Wheel Alignment

Wheel alignment is critical for ensuring that the tires deliver optimal wear and performance.

- Signs that the alignment may need to be adjusted include pulling, improper vehicle handling, or unusual tire wear.
- Your dealer has the required equipment to ensure proper wheel alignment.

Windshield

For safety, appearance, and the best viewing, keep the windshield clean and clear.

- Signs of damage include scratches, cracks, and chips.
- Trained dealer technicians can inspect the windshield and recommend proper replacement if needed.

Wiper Blades

Wiper blades need to be cleaned and kept in good condition to provide a clear view.

- Signs of wear include streaking, skipping across the windshield, and worn or split rubber.
- Trained dealer technicians can check the wiper blades and replace them when needed.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON-HP Automatic Transmission Fluid (GM Part No. 19353429, in Canada 19353430).
Chassis Lubrication	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL Coolant. See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *265* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *269*.
Engine Oil	Engine oil meeting the dexos1 specification of the proper SAE viscosity grade. ACDelco dexos1 full synthetic is recommended. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
Electronic Limited-Slip Differential (eLSD) Hydraulic Apply Fluid (V-Series Only)	DEXRON-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Hood Latch Assembly, Secondary Latch, Pivots, Spring Anchor, and Release Pawl	Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (GM Part No. 89021668, in Canada 89021674) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Hydraulic Brake/Clutch System	DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid (GM Part No. 19353126, in Canada 19299819).
Key Lock Cylinders, Hood and Door Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Manual Transmission (Except ATS-V)	DEXRON-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Manual Transmission (ATS-V)	Manual Transmission Fluid (GM Part No. 88861800, in Canada 88861801).

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Rear Axle/Front Axle (All-Wheel Drive)	Gear DEXRON MTF 75W-90 (GM Part No. 88863089, in Canada 88863090).
Rear Axle (Limited-Slip Differential)	DEXRON LS Gear 75W-90 (GM Part No. 88862624, in Canada 88862625).
Rear Axle (Non-Limited-Slip Differential)	Gear DEXRON MTF 75W-90 (GM Part No. 88863089, in Canada 88863090).
Transfer Case (All-Wheel Drive)	Transfer Case Fluid (GM Part No. 88861950, in Canada 88861951).
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. 3634770, in Canada 10953518) or equivalent.
Windshield Washer	Automotive windshield washer fluid that meets regional freeze protection requirements.

Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer.

Part	GM Part Number	ACDelco Part Number
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter		
2.0L L4, 3.6L V6 (LFX)	20857930	A3178C
3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LF4) (2 Required)	13367308	A3202C
Engine Oil Filter		
2.0L L4 Engine	12640445	PF64

Part	GM Part Number	ACDelco Part Number
3.6L V6 Engine (LGX)	19330000	PF63E
3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LF4)	19330000	PF63E
Passenger Compartment Air Filter	13508023	CF185
Spark Plugs		
2.0L L4 Engine	12647827	41-125
3.6L V6 Engine (LGX)	12646780	41-130
3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LF4)	12662396	41-147
Wiper Blades		
Driver Side – 55 cm (21.7 in)	23360288	—
Passenger Side – 45 cm (17.7 in)	23353587	—

Maintenance Records

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. Retain all maintenance receipts.

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance Stamp	Services Performed

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 349
Service Parts Identification Label 349

Vehicle Data

Capacities and Specifications 350
Engine Drive Belt Routing 353

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This legal identifier is in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver side of the vehicle. It can be seen through the windshield from outside. The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) also appears on the Vehicle Certification and Service Parts labels and certificates of title and registration.

Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code identifies the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See “Engine Specifications” under *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *350* for the vehicle's engine code.

Service Parts Identification Label

There may be a label on the inside of the trunk that contains the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options and special equipment

If there is no label, there is a barcode on the certification label on the center (B) pillar to scan for this same information.

Vehicle Data

Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in metric and English conversions. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *345* for more information.

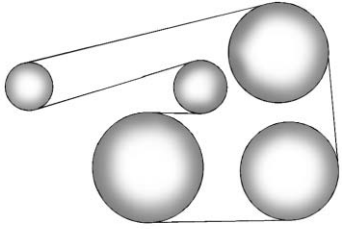
Application	Capacities	
	Metric	**English**
Air Conditioning Refrigerant	For the air conditioning system refrigerant type and charge amount, see the refrigerant label under the hood. See your dealer for more information.	
Cooling System – Engine		
2.0L L4 Engine	8.8 L	9.3 qt
3.6L V6 Engine without Additional Oil Cooler (RPO KC4)	10.0 L	10.6 qt
3.6L V6 Engine with Additional Oil Cooler (RPO KC4)	10.6 L	11.2 qt
3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (V-Series Only)	11.6 L	12.3 qt
3.6L V6 Cooling System Intercooler (V-Series Only)	3.1 L	3.3 qt
Engine Oil with Filter		
2.0L L4 Engine RWD	4.7 L	5.0 qt
2.0L L4 Engine AWD	5.7 L	6.0 qt
3.6L V6 Engine (LGX) RWD (without oil cooler)	5.2 L	5.5 qt

Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
3.6L V6 Engine (LGX) RWD (with oil cooler)	5.7 L	6.0 qt
3.6L V6 Engine (LGX) AWD	6.15 L	6.5 qt
3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine	6.6 L	7.0 qt
Fuel Tank	62.5 L	16.5 gal
Transfer Case – AWD	0.80 L	0.84 qt
Rear Axle (with non-limited-slip)	0.85 L	0.9 qt
Rear Axle (with limited-slip)	1.0 L	1.1 qt
Rear Axle (226 mm Axle with Differential Oil Cooler)	1.50 L	1.60 qt
Electronic Limited-Slip Differential (eLSD) Hydraulic Apply Fluid (V-Series only)	0.141 L	0.149 qt
Wheel Nut Torque – ATS	140 N•m	100 lb ft
Wheel Nut Torque – ATS-V	190 N•m	140 lb ft
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.		

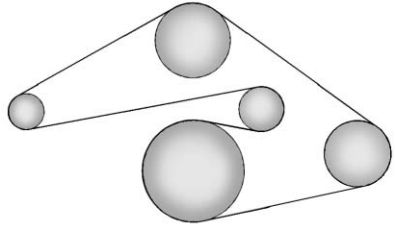
Engine Specifications

Engine	VIN Code	Transmission	Spark Plug Gap
2.0L L4 Engine (LTG)	X	Automatic Manual	0.9 mm (0.035 in)
3.6L V6 Engine (LGX)	S	Automatic	0.80–0.90 mm (0.031–0.035 in)
3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LF4)	Y	Automatic Manual	0.75–0.90 mm (0.030–0.035 in)

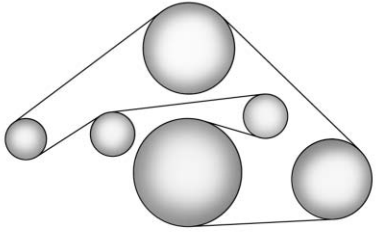
Engine Drive Belt Routing



2.0L L4 Engines



3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LF4)



3.6L V6 Engine (LGX)

Customer Information

Customer Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure 354
Customer Assistance Offices 356
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users 356
Online Owner Center 357
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 357
Roadside Service 358
Scheduling Service Appointments 360
Courtesy Transportation Program 360
Collision Damage Repair 361
Service Publications Ordering Information 363
Radio Frequency Statement 364

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 364
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 364
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 365

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 365
Event Data Recorders 366
OnStar 366
Infotainment System 367

Customer Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Cadillac. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of the vehicle will be resolved by your dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

STEP ONE : Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service or parts manager, contact the owner of your dealership or the general manager.

STEP TWO : If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by your dealership without

further help, in the U.S., call the Cadillac Customer Assistance Center at 1-800–458–8006. In Canada, call the Canadian Cadillac Customer Care Centre at 1-888-446-2000.

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.
- Dealership name and location.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.

When contacting Cadillac, remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest following Step One first.

STEP THREE — U.S. Owners : Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with the new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you can file with the Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program to enforce your rights.

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out-of-court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB Auto Line Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
3033 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 600
Arlington, VA 22201

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100
http://www.bbb.org/council/programs-services/dispute-handling-and-resolution/bbb-auto-line

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage, and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

STEP THREE — Canadian Owners : In the event that you do not feel your concerns have been addressed after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, General Motors of Canada Company wants you to be aware of its participation in a no-charge mediation/arbitration program. General Motors of Canada Company has committed to binding

arbitration of owner disputes involving factory-related vehicle service claims. The program provides for the review of the facts involved by an impartial third party arbiter, and may include an informal hearing before the arbiter. The program is designed so that the entire dispute settlement process, from the time you file your complaint to the final decision, should be completed in about 70 days. We believe our impartial program offers advantages over courts in most jurisdictions because it is informal, quick, and free of charge.

For further information concerning eligibility in the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP), call toll-free 1-800-207-0685, or call the Cadillac Customer Care Centre, 1-888-446-2000, or write to:

General Motors Cadillac Customer Care Centre
General Motors of Canada Company
Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

The inquiry should be accompanied by the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Customer Assistance Offices

Cadillac encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. However, if a customer wishes to write or e-mail Cadillac, the letter should be addressed to:

United States and Puerto Rico

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169
www.Cadillac.com

1-800-458-8006
1-800-833-2622 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Service: 1-800-224-1400

From U.S. Virgin Islands:

1-800-496-9994

Canada

General Motors of Canada Company
Cadillac Customer Care Centre, Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7
www.gm.ca

1-888-446-2000 (English/French)
Cadillac Roadside Service:
1-800-882-1112

Overseas

Contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Cadillac has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user can communicate with Cadillac by dialing: 1-800-833-2622. TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.

Online Owner Center

Online Owner Experience (U.S.) my.cadillac.com

The Cadillac online owner experience allows interaction with Cadillac and keeps important vehicle-specific information in one place.

Membership Benefits

: Download owner's manuals and view vehicle-specific how-to videos.

: View maintenance schedules, alerts, and OnStar onboard vehicle diagnostic information. Schedule service appointments.

: View printable dealer-recorded service records and self-recorded service records.

: Select a dealer and view locations, maps, phone numbers, and hours.

: Track your vehicle's warranty information.

: View active recalls or search by Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)* ⇨ *349*.

: View GM Card, SiriusXM Satellite radio (if equipped), and OnStar account information.

: Chat with online help representatives.

See my.cadillac.com to register your vehicle.

Cadillac Owner Centre (Canada) cadillacowner.ca

Visit the Cadillac Owner Centre:

- Chat live with online help representatives.
- Locate owner resources such as lease-end, financing, and warranty information.
- Retrieve favorite articles, quizzes, tips, and multimedia galleries organized into the Featured Articles and Auto Care Sections.
- Download owner's manuals.
- Find Cadillac-recommended maintenance services.

GM Mobility Reimbursement Program

GENERAL MOTORS MOBILITY

This program is available to qualified applicants for cost reimbursement, up to certain limits, of eligible aftermarket adaptive equipment required for the vehicle, such as hand controls or a wheelchair/scooter lift for the vehicle.

To learn about the GM Mobility program, see www.gmmobility.com or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text Telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

General Motors of Canada also has a Mobility program. See www.gm.ca or call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (800-463-7483) for details. TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

Roadside Service

U.S.: 1-800-224-1400.

Canada: 1-800-882-1112.

Text Telephone (TTY) Users (U.S. Only): 1-888-889-2438.

Service is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

Calling for Service

When calling Roadside Service, have the following information ready:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number
- Telephone number of your location
- Location of the vehicle
- Model, year, color, and license plate number of the vehicle
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), and delivery date of the vehicle
- Description of the problem

Coverage

Services are provided for the duration of the vehicle's powertrain warranty.

In the U.S., anyone driving the vehicle is covered. In Canada, a person driving the vehicle without permission from the owner is not covered.

Roadside Service is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. General Motors North America and Cadillac reserve the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Service program at any time without notification.

General Motors North America and Cadillac reserve the right to limit services or payment to an owner or driver if they decide the claims are made too often, or the same type of claim is made many times.

Cadillac Owner Privileges™

- **Emergency Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the vehicle to get to the nearest service station.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Service to unlock the vehicle if you are locked out. A remote unlock may be available if you have OnStar. For security reasons, the driver must present identification before this service is given.
- **Emergency Tow from a Public Road or Highway:** Tow to the nearest Cadillac dealer for warranty service, or if the vehicle was in a crash and cannot be driven. Assistance is not given when the vehicle is stuck in the sand, mud, or snow.
- **Flat Tire Change:** Service to change a flat tire with a spare tire. The spare tire, if equipped, must be in good condition and properly inflated. It is your responsibility for the repair or replacement of the tire if it is not covered by the warranty.

- **Battery Jump Start:** Service to jump start a dead battery.
- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Service:** If your trip is interrupted due to a warranty failure, incidental expenses may be reimbursed during the Powertrain warranty period. Items considered are hotel, meals, and rental car or a vehicle being delivered back to the customer, up to 500 miles.

Cadillac Technician Roadside Service (U.S. Only)

Cadillac's exceptional Roadside Service is more than an auto club or towing service. It provides every Cadillac owner in the United States with the advantage of contacting a Cadillac advisor and, where available, a Cadillac trained dealer technician who can provide on-site service.

A dealer technician will travel to your location within a 30-mile radius of a participating Cadillac dealership. If beyond this radius, we will arrange to have your car towed to the nearest Cadillac dealership. Each technician travels with a specially equipped service vehicle complete with the necessary Cadillac parts and tools required to handle most roadside repairs.

Services Not Included in Roadside Service

- Impound towing caused by violation of any laws
- Legal fines
- Mounting, dismounting, or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices

Service is not provided if a vehicle is in an area that is not accessible to the service vehicle or is not a regularly traveled or maintained public road, which includes ice and winter roads. Off-road use is not covered.

Services Specific to Canadian-Purchased Vehicles

- **Fuel delivery:** Reimbursement is up to 7 liters. Diesel fuel delivery may be restricted. Propane and other fuels are not provided through this service.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Vehicle registration is required.
- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Service:** Pre-authorization, original detailed receipts, and a copy of the repair orders are required. Once authorization has been received, the Roadside Service advisor will help you make arrangements and explain how to receive payment. Items considered are hotel, meals, and rental car or a vehicle being delivered back to the customer, up to 800 km.
- **Alternative Service:** If assistance cannot be provided right away, the Roadside Service advisor may give you permission to get local emergency road service. You will receive payment, up to $100, after sending the original receipt to Roadside Service. Mechanical failures may be covered, however any cost for parts and labor for repairs not covered by the warranty are the owner responsibility.

Scheduling Service Appointments

When the vehicle requires warranty service, contact your dealer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising the service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If the vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety related. If it is, please call your dealership, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If your dealer requests you to bring the vehicle for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for same-day repair.

Courtesy Transportation Program

To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for vehicles with the Bumper-to-Bumper (Base Warranty Coverage period in Canada), extended powertrain, and/or hybrid-specific warranties in both the U.S. and Canada.

Several Courtesy Transportation options are available to assist in reducing inconvenience when warranty repairs are required.

Courtesy Transportation is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled “Limited Warranty and Owner Assistance Information” furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to do so, your dealer may offer the following transportation options:

Shuttle Service

This includes one-way or round-trip shuttle service within reasonable time and distance parameters of your dealer's area.

Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If overnight warranty repairs are needed, and public transportation is used, the expense must be supported by original receipts and within the maximum amount allowed by GM for shuttle service. If U.S. customers arrange their own transportation, limited reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts. See your dealer for information.

Courtesy Rental Vehicle

For an overnight warranty repair, the dealer may provide an available courtesy rental vehicle or provide for reimbursement of a rental vehicle. Reimbursement is limited and must be supported by original receipts as well as a signed and completed rental agreement and meet state/provincial, local, and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. Additional fees such as fuel usage charges, taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair are also your responsibility.

It may not be possible to provide a like vehicle as a courtesy rental.

Additional Program Information

All program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Contact your dealer for specific availability.

General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change, or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.

Collision Damage Repair

If the vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs diminish the vehicle resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

Collision Parts

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which the vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are the best choice to ensure that the vehicle's designed appearance, durability, and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior crashes. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle. A recycled original equipment GM part may be an acceptable choice to maintain the vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance; however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for the vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts is not covered by that warranty.

Repair Facility

GM also recommends that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. Your dealer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state-of-the-art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

Insuring the Vehicle

Protect your investment in the GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms. Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to the GM vehicle by limiting compensation for damage repairs by using aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you ensure that the vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts.

If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

If the vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that ensures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read the lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of the lease for poor quality repairs.

If a Crash Occurs

If there has been an injury, call emergency services for help. Do not leave the scene of a crash until all matters have been taken care of. Move the vehicle only if its position puts you in danger, or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.

Give only the necessary information to police and other parties involved in the crash.

For emergency towing see *Roadside Service* ⇨ *358*.

Gather the following information:

- Driver name, address, and telephone number
- Driver license number
- Owner name, address, and telephone number
- Vehicle license plate number
- Vehicle make, model, and model year
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Insurance company and policy number
- General description of the damage to the other vehicle

Choose a reputable repair facility that uses quality replacement parts. See “Collision Parts” earlier in this section.

If the airbag has inflated, see *What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?* ⇨ *81*.

Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process

In the event that the vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair.

If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take the vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by the GM vehicle warranty.

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with the repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts. Remember, if the vehicle is leased, you may be obligated to have the vehicle repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as the cost stays within reasonable limits.

Service Publications Ordering Information

Service Manuals

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on the engines, transmission, axle, suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

Owner Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The Owner's Manual includes the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

In-Portfolio: Includes a Portfolio, Owner's Manual, and Warranty Manual.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $35.00 – $40.00 (U.S.) plus handling and shipping fees.

Without Pouch: Owner's Manual only.

RETAIL SELL PRICE:
$25.00 (U.S.) plus handling and shipping fees.

Current and Past Models

Service and Owner publications are available for many current and past model year GM vehicles.

ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-551-4123
Monday – Friday 8:00 AM – 6:00 PM Eastern Time

For Credit Card Orders Only (VISA-MasterCard-Discover), see Helm, Inc. at: www.helminc.com.

Or write to:

Helm, Incorporated
Attention: Customer Service
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, MI 48170

Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation. Allow ample time for delivery.

All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds. Make checks payable in U.S. funds.

Radio Frequency Statement

This vehicle has systems that operate on a radio frequency that complies with Part 15/Part 18 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development (ISED) Canada's RSP-100 / license-exempt RSS's / ICES-001.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device may not cause harmful interference.
2. The device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to any of these systems by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov;* or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, S.E.
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov.*

Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that the vehicle has a safety defect, notify Transport Canada immediately, and notify General Motors of Canada Company. Call Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0510; go to:

www.tc.gc.ca/recalls (English)

www.tc.gc.ca/rappels (French)

or write to:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Directorate
Defect Investigations and Recalls Division
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC J8Z 0A1

Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, notify General Motors.

Call 1-800-458-8006, or write:

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169

In Canada, call 1-888-446-2000, or write:

Canadian Cadillac Customer Care Centre, Mail Code: CA1-163-005
General Motors of Canada Company
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

In Mexico, call 01-800-466-0805.

In other Central America and Caribbean Countries, call 52-722-236-0680.

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

The vehicle has a number of computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven. For example, the vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy them in a crash, and, if equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help the dealer technician service the vehicle. Some modules may also store data about how the vehicle is operated, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may retain personal preferences, such as radio presets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access these data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request by police or similar government office; as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

OnStar

If the vehicle is equipped with OnStar and has an active service plan, additional data may be collected through the OnStar system. This includes information about the vehicle's operation; collisions involving the vehicle; the use of the vehicle and its features; and, in certain situations, the location and approximate GPS speed of the vehicle. Refer to the OnStar Terms and Conditions and Privacy Statement on the OnStar website.

See *OnStar Additional Information* ⇨ *374*.

Infotainment System

If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system as part of the infotainment system, use of the system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. See the infotainment manual for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

OnStar

OnStar Overview
OnStar Overview 368

OnStar Services
Emergency 369
Security 370
Navigation 370
Connections 371
Diagnostics 373

OnStar Additional Information
OnStar Additional Information 374

OnStar Overview

Voice Command Button

Blue OnStar Button

Red Emergency Button

This vehicle may be equipped with a comprehensive, in-vehicle system that can connect to an OnStar Advisor for Emergency, Security, Navigation, Connections, and Diagnostics Services. OnStar services may require a paid service plan and data plan. OnStar requires the vehicle battery and electrical system, cellular service, and GPS satellite signals to be available and operating. OnStar acts as a link to existing emergency service providers. OnStar may collect information about you and your vehicle, including location information. See OnStar User Terms, Privacy Statement, and Software Terms for more details including system limitations at www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada).

The OnStar system status light is next to the OnStar buttons. If the status light is:

- Solid Green: System is ready.
- Flashing Green: On a call.
- Red: Indicates a problem.
- Off: System is active. Press twice to speak with an OnStar Advisor.

Press or call 1-888-4ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) to speak to an Advisor.

Functionality of the Voice Command button may vary by vehicle and region.

Press to:

- Open the OnStar app on the infotainment display. See the infotainment manual for information on how to use the OnStar app.

Or

- Make a call, end a call, or answer an incoming call.
- Give OnStar Hands-Free Calling voice commands.
- Give OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation voice commands.
- Obtain and customize the Wi-Fi hotspot name or SSID and password, if equipped.

Press to connect to an Advisor to:

- Verify account information or update contact information.
- Get driving directions.
- Receive a Diagnostic check of the vehicle's key operating systems.
- Receive Roadside Assistance.
- Manage Wi-Fi Settings, if equipped.

Press SOS to get a priority connection to an OnStar Advisor available 24/7 to:

- Get help for an emergency.
- Be a Good Samaritan or respond to an AMBER Alert.
- Get assistance in severe weather or other crisis situations and find evacuation routes.

OnStar Services

Emergency

Emergency Services require an active, OnStar service plan (excludes Basic Plan). With Automatic Crash Response, built-in sensors can automatically alert a specially trained OnStar Advisor who is immediately connected in to the vehicle to help.

Press SOS for a priority connection to an OnStar Advisor who can contact emergency service providers, direct them to your exact location, and relay important information.

With OnStar Crisis Assist, specially trained Advisors are available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, to provide a central point of contact, assistance, and information during a crisis.

With Roadside Assistance, Advisors can locate a nearby service provider to help with a flat tire, a battery jump, or an empty gas tank.

Security

If equipped, OnStar provides these services:

- With Stolen Vehicle Assistance, OnStar Advisors can use GPS to pinpoint the vehicle and help authorities quickly recover it.
- With Remote Ignition Block, if equipped, OnStar can block the engine from being restarted.
- With Stolen Vehicle Slowdown, if equipped, OnStar can work with law enforcement to gradually slow the vehicle down.

Theft Alarm Notification

If equipped, if the doors are locked and the vehicle alarm sounds, a notification by text, e-mail, or phone call will be sent. If the vehicle is stolen, an OnStar Advisor can work with authorities to recover the vehicle.

Navigation

OnStar navigation requires a specific OnStar service plan.

Press to receive Turn-by-Turn directions or have them sent to the vehicle's navigation screen, if equipped.

Turn-by-Turn Navigation

1. Press to connect to an Advisor.
2. Request directions to be downloaded to the vehicle.
3. Follow the voice-guided commands.

Using Voice Commands During a Planned Route

Functionality of the Voice Command button may vary by vehicle and region. For some vehicles, press to open the OnStar app on the infotainment display. For other vehicles press as follows.

Cancel Route

1. Press . System responds: "OnStar ready," then a tone.
2. Say "Cancel route." System responds: "Do you want to cancel directions?"
3. Say "Yes." System responds: "OK, request completed, thank you, goodbye."

Route Preview

1. Press . System responds: "OnStar ready," then a tone.
2. Say "Route preview." System responds with the next three maneuvers.

Repeat

1. Press . System responds: "OnStar ready," then a tone.
2. Say "Repeat." System responds with the last direction given, then responds with "OnStar ready," then a tone.

Get My Destination

1. Press . System responds: "OnStar ready," then a tone.

2. Say “Get my destination.” System responds with the address and distance to the destination, then responds with “OnStar ready,” then a tone.

Send Destination to Vehicle

Directions can be sent to the vehicle’s navigation screen, if equipped.

Press , then ask the Advisor to download directions to the vehicle’s navigation system, if equipped. After the call ends, the navigation screen will provide prompts to begin driving directions. Routes that are sent to the navigation screen can only be canceled through the navigation system.

See www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada).

Connections

The following OnStar services help with staying connected.

For coverage maps, see www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada).

Ensuring Security

- Change the default passwords for the Wi-Fi hotspot and myCadillac mobile app. Make these passwords different from each other and use a combination of letters, numbers, and symbols to increase the security.
- Change the default name of the SSID (Service Set Identifier). This is your network’s name that is visible to other wireless devices. Choose a unique name and avoid family names or vehicle descriptions.

OnStar Wi-Fi Hotspot (If Equipped)

The vehicle may have a built-in Wi-Fi hotspot that provides access to the Internet and web content at 4G LTE speed. Up to seven mobile devices can be connected. A data plan is required. Use the in-vehicle controls only when it is safe to do so.

1. To retrieve Wi-Fi hotspot information, press to open the OnStar app on the infotainment display, then select Wi-Fi Hotspot. On some vehicles, touch Wi-Fi or Wi-Fi Settings on the screen.
2. The Wi-Fi settings will display the Wi-Fi hotspot name (SSID), password, and on some vehicles, the connection type (no Internet connection, 3G, 4G, 4G LTE), and signal quality (poor, good, excellent).
3. To change the SSID or password, press or call 1-888-4ONSTAR to connect with an Advisor. On some vehicles, the SSID and password can be changed in the Wi-Fi Hotspot menu.

After initial set-up, your vehicle’s Wi-Fi hotspot will connect automatically to your mobile devices. Manage data usage by turning Wi-Fi on or off on your mobile device, by using the myCadillac mobile app, or by contacting an OnStar Advisor. On some vehicles, Wi-Fi can also be managed from the Wi-Fi Hotspot menu.

MyCadillac Mobile App (If Available)

Download the myCadillac mobile app to compatible Apple and Android smartphones. Cadillac users can access the following services from a smartphone:

- Remotely start/stop the vehicle, if factory-equipped.
- Lock/unlock doors, if equipped with automatic locks.
- Activate the horn and lamps.
- Check the vehicle's fuel level, oil life, or tire pressure, if factory-equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System.
- Send destinations to the vehicle.
- Locate the vehicle on a map (U.S. market only).
- Turn the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot on/off, manage settings, and monitor data consumption, if equipped.
- Locate a dealer and schedule service.
- Request roadside assistance.
- Set a parking reminder with pin drop, take a photo, make a note, and set a timer.
- Connect with Cadillac on social media.

For myCadillac mobile app information and compatibility, see www.my.cadillac.com.

An active OnStar service, compatible device, factory-installed remote start, and power locks are required. Data rates apply. See www.onstar.com for details and system limitations.

Remote Services

Contact an OnStar Advisor to unlock the doors or sound the horn and flash the lamps.

OnStar AtYourService

OnStar Advisors can provide offers from restaurants and retailers on your route, help locate hotels, or book a room. These services vary by market.

OnStar Hands-Free Calling

Make and receive calls with the built-in wireless calling service, which requires available minutes. Functionality of the Voice Command button may vary by vehicle and region. For some vehicles, press to open the OnStar app on the infotainment display, then select Hands-Free calling. For other vehicles press as follows.

Make a Call

1. Press . System responds: “OnStar ready.”
2. Say “Call.” System responds: “Call. Please say the name or number to call.”
3. Say the entire number without pausing, including a “1” and the area code. System responds: “OK, calling.”

Calling 911 Emergency

1. Press . System responds: “OnStar ready.”

2. Say “Call.” System responds: “Call. Please say the name or number to call.”
3. Say “911” without pausing. System responds: “911.”
4. Say “Call.” System responds: “OK, dialing 911.”

Retrieve My Number

1. Press . System responds: “OnStar ready.”
2. Say “My number.” System responds: “Your OnStar Hands-Free Calling number is,” then says the number.

End a Call

Press . System responds: “Call ended.”

Verify Minutes and Expiration

Press and say “Minutes” then “Verify” to check how many minutes remain and their expiration date.

Diagnostics

By monitoring and reporting on the vehicle’s key systems, OnStar Advanced Diagnostics provides a way to keep up on maintenance. Capabilities vary by model. See www.onstar.com for details and system limitations. Message and data rates may apply. Advanced Diagnostics requires an active OnStar paid service plan, e-mail address on file, and enrollment in Advanced Diagnostics.

Includes:

- Diagnostic Alerts: Set preferences to receive real-time e-mails, texts, or monthly reports of the vehicle’s health. Or press to have an Advisor initiate a remote diagnostic report.
- Proactive Alerts: Receive a real-time e-mail or text message regarding potential issues with key vehicle components, such as the battery, fuel system, or starter system. Alerts for potential issues appear on the infotainment display. Proactive Alerts are designed to help predict specific types of issues based on information collected from the vehicle. Other factors may affect vehicle performance. Not all issues will deliver alerts. In some cases, a dealer service check may be required to confirm the accuracy of the alerts.
- Dealer Maintenance Notification: Have the vehicle notify your preferred dealer when it is time for maintenance. Your dealer will then contact you to set up an appointment.

To begin, press to speak to an Advisor, or see www.onstar.com.

OnStar Additional Information

In-Vehicle Audio Messages

Audio messages may play important information at the following times:

- Prior to vehicle purchase. Press to set up an account.
- With the OnStar Basic Plan, every 60 days.
- After change in ownership and at 90 days.

Transferring Service

Press to request account transfer eligibility information. The Advisor can cancel or change account information.

Selling/Transferring the Vehicle

Call 1-888-4ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) immediately to terminate your OnStar or connected services if the vehicle is disposed of, sold, transferred, or if the lease ends.

Reactivation for Subsequent Owners

Press and follow the prompts to speak to an Advisor as soon as possible. The Advisor will update vehicle records and explain OnStar or connected service options.

How OnStar Service Works

Automatic Crash Response, Emergency Services, Crisis Assist, Stolen Vehicle Assistance, Remote Services, Roadside Assistance, and Hands-Free Calling are available on most vehicles. Not all OnStar services are available everywhere or on all vehicles. For more information, a full description of OnStar services, system limitations, and OnStar User Terms, Privacy Statement, and Software Terms:

- Call 1-888-4ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827).
- See www.onstar.com (U.S.).
- See www.onstar.ca (Canada).
- Call TTY 1-877-248-2080.
- Press to speak with an Advisor.

OnStar or connected services cannot work unless the vehicle is in a place where OnStar has an agreement with a wireless service provider for service in that area. The wireless service provider must also have coverage, network capacity, reception, and technology compatible with OnStar or connected services. Service involving location information about the vehicle cannot work unless GPS signals are available, unobstructed, and compatible with the OnStar hardware. OnStar or connected services may not work if the OnStar equipment is not properly installed or it has not been properly maintained. If equipment or software is added, connected, or modified, OnStar or connected services may not work. Other problems beyond the control of OnStar — such as hills, tall buildings, tunnels, weather, electrical system design and architecture of the vehicle, damage to the vehicle in a crash, or wireless phone network congestion or jamming — may prevent service.

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *364*.

Services for People with Disabilities

Advisors provide services to help with physical disabilities and medical conditions.

Press to help:

- Locate a gas station with an attendant to pump gas.
- Find a hotel, restaurant, etc., that meets accessibility needs.
- Provide directions to the closest hospital or pharmacy in urgent situations.

TTY Users

OnStar has the ability to communicate to deaf, hard-of-hearing, or speech-impaired customers while in the vehicle. The available dealer-installed TTY system can provide in-vehicle access to all OnStar services, except Virtual Advisor and OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation.

OnStar Personal Identification Number (PIN)

A PIN is needed to access some OnStar services. The PIN will need to be changed the first time when speaking with an Advisor. To change the OnStar PIN, contact an OnStar Advisor by pressing or calling 1-888-4ONSTAR.

Warranty

OnStar equipment may be warranted as part of the vehicle warranty.

Languages

The vehicle can be programmed to respond in multiple languages. Press and ask for an Advisor. Advisors are available in English, Spanish, and French. Available languages may vary by country.

Potential Issues

OnStar cannot perform Remote Door Unlock or Stolen Vehicle Assistance after the vehicle has been off continuously for 10 days without an ignition cycle. If the vehicle has not been started for 10 days, OnStar can contact Roadside Assistance or a locksmith to help gain access to the vehicle.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

- Obstruction of the GPS can occur in a large city with tall buildings; in parking garages; around airports; in tunnels and underpasses; or in an area with very dense trees. If GPS signals are not available, the OnStar system should still operate to call OnStar. However, OnStar could have difficulty identifying the exact location.
- In emergency situations, OnStar can use the last stored GPS location to send to emergency responders.

A temporary loss of GPS can cause loss of the ability to send a Turn-by-Turn Navigation route. The Advisor may give a verbal route or may ask for a call back after the vehicle is driven into an open area.

Cellular and GPS Antennas

Cellular reception is required for OnStar to send remote signals to the vehicle. Do not place items over or near the antenna to prevent blocking cellular and GPS signal reception.

Unable to Connect to OnStar Message

If there is limited cellular coverage or the cellular network has reached maximum capacity, this message may come on. Press to try the call again or try again after driving a few miles into another cellular area.

Vehicle and Power Issues

OnStar services require a vehicle electrical system, wireless service, and GPS satellite technologies to be available and operating for features to function properly. These systems may not operate if the battery is discharged or disconnected.

Add-on Electrical Equipment

The OnStar system is integrated into the electrical architecture of the vehicle. Do not add any electrical equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *249*. Added electrical equipment may interfere with the operation of the OnStar system and cause it to not operate.

Vehicle Software Updates

OnStar or GM may remotely deliver software updates or changes to the vehicle without further notice or consent. These updates or changes may enhance or maintain safety, security, or the operation of the vehicle or the vehicle systems. Software updates or changes may affect or erase data or settings that are stored in the vehicle, such as OnStar Hands-Free Calling name tags, saved navigation destinations, or pre-set radio stations. Neither OnStar nor GM is responsible for any affected or erased data or settings. These updates or changes may also collect personal information. Such collection is described in the OnStar privacy statement or separately disclosed at the time of installation. These updates or changes may also cause a system to automatically communicate with GM servers to collect information about vehicle system status, identify whether updates or changes are available, or deliver updates or changes. An active OnStar agreement constitutes consent to these software updates or changes and agreement that either OnStar or GM may remotely deliver them to the vehicle.

Privacy

The complete OnStar Privacy Statement may be found at www.onstar.com (U.S.), or www.onstar.ca (Canada). We recommend that you review it. If you have any questions, call 1-888-4ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) or press to speak with an Advisor. Users of wireless communications are cautioned that the privacy of any information sent via wireless cellular communications cannot be assured. Third parties may unlawfully intercept or access transmissions and private communications without consent.

OnStar - Software Acknowledgements

Certain OnStar components include libcurl and unzip software and other third party software. Below are the notices and licenses associated with libcurl and unzip and for other third party software please see http://opensource.lge.com/index

www.onstar.com/us/en/

libcurl:

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright (c) 1996 - 2010, Daniel Stenberg, <daniel@haxx.se>.

All rights reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS," WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

unzip:

This is version 2005-Feb-10 of the Info-ZIP copyright and license. The definitive version of this document should be available at ftp://ftp.info-zip.org/pub/infozip/license.html indefinitely.

Copyright (c) 1990-2005 Info-ZIP. All rights reserved.

For the purposes of this copyright and license, "Info-ZIP" is defined as the following set of individuals:

Mark Adler, John Bush, Karl Davis, Harald Denker, Jean-Michel Dubois, Jean-loup Gailly, Hunter Goatley, Ed Gordon, Ian Gorman, Chris Herborth, Dirk Haase, Greg Hartwig, Robert Heath, Jonathan Hudson, Paul Kienitz, David Kirschbaum, Johnny Lee, Onno van der Linden, Igor Mandrichenko, Steve P. Miller, Sergio Monesi, Keith Owens, George Petrov, Greg Roelofs, Kai Uwe Rommel, Steve Salisbury, Dave Smith, Steven M. Schweda, Christian Spieler, Cosmin Truta, Antoine Verheijen, Paul von Behren, Rich Wales, Mike White.

This software is provided "as is," without warranty of any kind, express or implied. In no event shall Info-ZIP or its contributors be held liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special or consequential damages arising out of the use of or inability to use this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions.
2. Redistributions in binary form (compiled executables) must reproduce the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions in documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. The sole exception to this condition is redistribution of a standard UnZipSFX binary (including SFXWiz) as part of a self-extracting archive; that is permitted without inclusion of this license, as long as the normal SFX banner has not been removed from the binary or disabled.
3. Altered versions–including, but not limited to, ports to new operating systems, existing ports with new graphical interfaces, and dynamic, shared, or static library versions–must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source. Such altered versions also must not be misrepresented as being Info-ZIP releases–including, but not limited to, labeling of the altered versions with the names "Info-ZIP" (or any variation thereof, including, but not limited to, different capitalizations), "Pocket UnZip," "WiZ" or "MacZip" without the explicit permission of Info-ZIP. Such altered versions are further prohibited from misrepresentative use of the Zip-Bugs or Info-ZIP e-mail addresses or of the Info-ZIP URL(s).
4. Info-ZIP retains the right to use the names "Info-ZIP," "Zip," "UnZip," "UnZipSFX," "WiZ," "Pocket UnZip," "Pocket Zip," and "MacZip" for its own source and binary releases.

Index

A

Accessories and Modifications 252
Accessory Power 195
Active Rev Match 204
Adaptive Cruise Control 220
Adaptive Forward
  Lighting (AFL) 153
Adaptive Forward Lighting
  (AFL) Light 133
Add-On Electrical Equipment 249
Additional Information
  OnStar 374
Additional Maintenance
  and Care 342
Adjustments
  Lumbar, Front Seats 59
  Thigh Support 60
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 264
Air Conditioning 163, 167
Air Filter, Passenger
  Compartment 172
Air Vents 171
Airbag System
  Check 88
  How Does an Airbag Restrain?.....81
  Passenger Sensing System 82
  What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 80
Airbag System (cont'd)
  What Will You See after an
    Airbag Inflates? 81
  When Should an Airbag
    Inflate?.....79
  Where Are the Airbags? 78
Airbags
  Adding Equipment to the
    Vehicle 87
  Passenger Status Indicator 124
  Readiness Light 124
  Servicing Airbag-Equipped
    Vehicles 86
  System Check 76
Alarm
  Vehicle Security 45
Alert
  Lane Change 237
  Side Blind Zone (SBZA) 236
All-Season Tires 291
All-Wheel Drive 205, 274
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 205
  Warning Light 128
Appearance Care
  Exterior 326
  Interior 330
Armrest Storage 108
Assistance Systems for Driving 232

Assistance Systems for Parking and Backing 229
Automatic
Door Locks 42
Forward Braking 235
Headlamp System 152
Transmission 199
Transmission Fluid 263
Automatic Transmission
Manual Mode 201
Shift Lock Control Function Check 276

B

Battery
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 156
Power Protection 156
Battery - North America 273, 320
Blade Replacement, Wiper 276
Brake
System Warning Light 127
Brakes 271
Antilock 205
Assist 208
Fluid 272
Parking 206, 208
Braking 176
Braking (cont'd)
Automatic Forward 235
Break-In, New Vehicle 189
Bulb Replacement
Back-up Lamps 279
Halogen Bulbs 279
Headlamp Aiming 278
Headlamps 279
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 279
License Plate Lamps 280
Buying New Tires 306

C

Cadillac Premium Care Maintenance 336
Calibration 114
California
Fuel Requirements 241
Perchlorate Materials Requirements 252
California Proposition 65 Warning .....251, 273, 320, Back Cover
Canadian Vehicle Owners 2
Capacities and Specifications 350
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 198
Carbon Monoxide (cont'd)
Trunk 43
Winter Driving 184
Cargo
Tie-Downs 109
Caution, Danger, and Warning 3
Center Console Storage 108
Chains, Tire 310
Charging
Wireless 115
Charging System Light 125
Check
Engine Light (Malfunction Indicator) 125
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children 90
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 95
Older Children 88
Securing 101, 103
Systems 92
Circuit Breakers 281
Cleaning
Exterior Care 326
Interior Care 330
Climate Control Systems
Dual Automatic 163, 167
Clock 114

Cluster, Instrument 118
Clutch, Hydraulic 263
Collision Damage Repair 361
Compartments
  Storage 107
Compass 114
Competitive Driving Mode 214
Composite Materials 190
Compressor Kit, Tire Sealant 312
Connections
  OnStar 371
Control
  Traction and Electronic
    Stability 209
Control of a Vehicle 176
Convex Mirrors 48
Coolant
  Engine Temperature Gauge 122
  Engine Temperature Warning
    Light 130
Cooling 163, 167
Cooling System 265, 269
Courtesy Lamps 154
Courtesy Transportation
  Program 360
Cruise Control 218
  Light 133
Cruise Control, Adaptive 220
Cupholders 108
Customer Assistance 356
  Offices 356
  Text Telephone (TTY) Users 356
Customer Information
  Service Publications Ordering
    Information 363
Customer Satisfaction
  Procedure 354

D

Damage Repair, Collision 361
Danger, Warning, and Caution 3
Data Collection
  Infotainment System 367
  OnStar 366
Data Recorder
  Performance 157
Data Recorders, Event 366
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) ... 151
Defensive Driving 176
Delayed Locking 41
Diagnostics
  OnStar 373
Distracted Driving 175
Dome Lamps 154
Door
  Ajar Light 133
Door (cont'd)
  Delayed Locking 41
  Locks 39
  Power Locks 41
  Rear Seat Pass-Through 69
Drive Belt Routing, Engine 353
Drive Systems
  All-Wheel Drive 205, 274
Driver Assistance Systems 228
Driver Information
  Center (DIC) 134
Driver Mode Control 210
Driving
  Assistance Systems 232
  Characteristics and
    Towing Tips 244
  Competitive 214
  Defensive 176
  Drunk 176
  For Better Fuel Economy 28
  Hill and Mountain Roads 184
  If the Vehicle is Stuck 186
  Loss of Control 178
  Off-Road Recovery 177
  Track Events and Competitive ... 178
  Vehicle Load Limits 186
  Wet Roads 183
  Winter 184

Dual Automatic Climate
Control System 163, 167

E

Easy Entry Seat 56
Electrical Equipment, Add-On 249
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse
Block 282
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 281
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 285
Overload 281
Rear Compartment Fuse
Block 287
Emergency
OnStar 369
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 264
Check Light (Malfunction
Indicator) 125
Compartment Overview 254
Coolant Temperature Gauge 122
Coolant Temperature
Warning Light 130
Cooling System 265, 269
Drive Belt Routing 353
Exhaust 198
Heater 194
Engine (cont'd)
Oil Life System 261
Oil Pressure Light 131
Overheating 269
Power Messages 140
Running While Parked 199
Starting 192
Entry Lighting 156
Equipment, Towing 248, 249
Event Data Recorders 366
Exit Lighting 156
Extended Parking 197
Extender, Seat Belt 75
Exterior Lamp Controls 149
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 151
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 156

F

Features
Memory 14
Filter,
Engine Air Cleaner 264
Flash-to-Pass 151
Flashers, Hazard Warning 153
Flat Tire 311
Floor Mats 333
Fluid
Automatic Transmission 263
Fluid (cont'd)
Brakes 272
Washer 271
Folding Mirrors 48
Forward Automatic Braking 235
Forward Collision Alert (FCA)
System 232
Frequency Statement
Radio 364
Front Seats
Heated 64
Fuel 240
Additives 242
Economy Driving 28
Filling a Portable Fuel
Container 244
Filling the Tank 242
Foreign Countries 242
Gauge 122
Low Fuel Warning Light 132
Requirements, California 241
Fuses
Engine Compartment Fuse
Block 282
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 281
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 285
Rear Compartment Fuse
Block 287

G

Garage Door Opener 146
  Programming 146
Gas Strut(s) 277
Gauges
  Engine Coolant Temperature 122
  Fuel 122
  Odometer 121
  Speedometer 121
  Tachometer 121
  Trip Odometer 121
  Warning Lights and
    Indicators 117
General Information
  Service and Maintenance 334
  Towing 244
  Vehicle Care 251
Glove Box 107
GM Mobility Reimbursement
  Program 357

H

Halogen Bulbs 279
Hazard Warning Flashers 153
Head Restraints 55
Head-up Display 136
Headlamps
  Adaptive Forward
    Lighting (AFL) 153
  Aiming 278
  Automatic 152
  Bulb Replacement 279
  Daytime Running
    Lamps (DRL) 151
  Flash-to-Pass 151
  High Intensity Discharge
    (HID) Lighting 279
  High-Beam On Light 132
  High/Low Beam Changer 151
  Lamps On Reminder 133
  Washer 113
Heated
  Steering Wheel 111
Heated Front Seats 64
Heated Mirrors 49
Heater
  Engine 194
Heating 163, 167
High-Beam On Light 132
High-Speed Operation 299
Hill and Mountain Roads 184
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 209
Hood 253
Horn 112
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly ... 71
HVAC 163, 167
Hydraulic Clutch 263

I

Ignition Positions 190
Immobilizer 47
Indicator
  Vehicle Ahead 129
Infants and Young Children,
  Restraints 90
Infotainment 157
Infotainment System 367
Instrument Cluster 118
Instrument Panel
  Storage Area 107
Instrument Panel Overview 6
Interior Rearview Mirrors 49
Introduction 2

J

Jump Starting - North America 320

K

Keyless Entry
  Remote (RKE) System 31
Keys 30

L

Labeling, Tire Sidewall 293

Lamps
Courtesy 154
Daytime Running (DRL) 151
Dome 154
Exterior Controls 149
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 151
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 156
License Plate 280
Malfunction Indicator (Check Engine) 125
On Reminder 133
Reading 155
Lane Change Alert (LCA) 237
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 238
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 239
Lane Keep Assist Light 129
Lap-Shoulder Belt 72
LATCH System Replacing Parts after a Crash 101
LATCH, Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 95
LED Lighting 279
Lighting
Adaptive Forward 153
Entry 156
Exit 156
Lighting (cont'd)
Illumination Control 154
LED 279
Lights
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light 133
Airbag Readiness 124
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 128
Brake System Warning 127
Charging System 125
Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator) 125
Cruise Control 133
Door Ajar 133
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning 130
Engine Oil Pressure 131
Flash-to-Pass 151
High-Beam On 132
High/Low Beam Changer 151
Lane Keep Assist 129
Low Fuel Warning 132
Parking Brake 128
Seat Belt Reminders 123
Security 132
Service Electric Parking Brake ... 128
StabiliTrak OFF 129
Lights (cont'd)
Tire Pressure 131
Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak 130
Traction Off 129
Limited-Slip Rear Axle 217
Locks
Automatic Door 42
Delayed Locking 41
Door 39
Lockout Protection 42
Power Door 41
Safety 43
Loss of Control 178
Low Fuel Warning Light 132
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 95
Lumbar Adjustment 59
Front Seats 59

M

Maintenance Records 348
Maintenance and Care Additional 342
Maintenance Schedule 336

Maintenance Schedule (cont'd)
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 345
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 125
Manual Mode 201
Manual Transmission 203
Fluid 263
Matching
Active Rev 204
Memory Features 14
Memory Seats 61
Messages
Engine Power 140
Vehicle 140
Vehicle Speed 141
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview 49
Convex 48
Folding 48
Heated 49
Manual Rearview 49
Power 48
Tilt in Reverse 49
Mirrors, Interior Rearview 49
Mode 210
Driver Control 210
Monitor System, Tire Pressure 299

N

Navigation
OnStar 370
New Vehicle Break-In 189

O

Odometer 121
Trip 121
Off-Road
Recovery 177
Oil
Engine 259
Engine Oil Life System 261
Pressure Light 131
Older Children, Restraints 88
Online Owner Center 357
OnStar 366
OnStar Additional Information 374
OnStar Connections 371
OnStar Diagnostics 373
OnStar Emergency 369
OnStar Navigation 370
OnStar Overview 368
OnStar Security 370
Ordering
Service Publications 363
Outlets
Power 114
Overheating, Engine 269

P

Park
Shifting Into 195
Shifting Out of 196
Parking 197
Brake 206, 208
Brake and P (Park)
Mechanism Check 276
Extended 197
Over Things That Burn 197
Parking Assist 229
Parking Brake
Light 128
Parking or Backing
Assistance Systems 229
Passenger Airbag Status
Indicator 124
Passenger Compartment Air
Filter 172
Passenger Sensing System 82
Perchlorate Materials
Requirements, California 252
Performance Data
Recorder (PDR) 157
Personalization
Vehicle 141

Power
Door Locks 41
Mirrors 48
Outlets 114
Protection, Battery 156
Retained Accessory (RAP) 195
Seat Adjustment 57
Windows 50
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts 74
Premium Care Maintenance
Cadillac 336
Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording 365
Program
Courtesy Transportation 360
Proposition
65 Warning,
California .....251, 273, 320, Back Cover

R

Radio Frequency Statement 364
Reading Lamps 155
Rear Axle
Limited-Slip 217
Rear Seat Pass-Through Door 69
Rear Seats 66, 68
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 229
Rearview Mirrors 49
Automatic Dimming 49
Reclining Seatbacks 60
Recommended Fluids and
Lubricants 345
Records
Maintenance 348
Recreational Vehicle Towing 323
Reimbursement Program, GM
Mobility 357
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE)
System 31
Remote Vehicle Start 37
Replacement Parts
Airbags 88
Maintenance 346
Replacing Airbag System 88
Replacing LATCH System Parts
after a Crash 101
Replacing Seat Belt System
Parts after a Crash 76
Reporting Safety Defects
Canadian Government 364
General Motors 365
U.S. Government 364
Restraints
Where to Put 94
Retained Accessory
Power (RAP) 195
Reverse Tilt Mirrors 49
Ride Control Systems
Limited Slip Rear Axle 217
Roads
Driving, Wet 183
Roadside Service 358
Roof
Sunroof 52
Rotation, Tires 303
Routing, Engine Drive Belt 353
Run-Flat Tires 292
Running the Vehicle While
Parked 199

S

Safety Defects Reporting
Canadian Government 364
General Motors 365
U.S. Government 364
Safety Locks 43
Safety System Check 75
Scheduling Appointments 360
Sealant Kit, Tire 312
Seat Belts 70
Care 75
Extender 75

Seat Belts (cont'd)
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 71
Lap-Shoulder Belt 72
Reminders 123
Replacing after a Crash 76
Use During Pregnancy 74
Seats
Easy Entry Seat 56
Head Restraints 55
Heated Front 64
Lumbar Adjustment, Front 59
Memory 61
Power Adjustment, Front 57
Rear 66, 68
Reclining Seatbacks 60
Securing Child Restraints 101, 103
Security
Light 132
OnStar 370
Vehicle 45
Vehicle Alarm 45
Self-Sealing Tires 292
Service 173
Accessories and Modifications 252
Doing Your Own Work 252
Maintenance Records 348
Service (cont'd)
Maintenance, General Information 334
Parts Identification Label 349
Publications Ordering Information 363
Scheduling Appointments 360
Service Electric Parking Brake Light 128
Services
Special Application 341
Servicing the Airbag 86
Shift Lock Control Function Check, Automatic Transmission 276
Shifting
Into Park 195
Out of Park 196
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 236
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change 153
Special Application Services 341
Specifications and Capacities 350
Speedometer 121
StabiliTrak
OFF Light 129
Start Assist, Hill 209
Start Vehicle, Remote 37
Starter Switch Check 275
Starting the Engine 192
Steering 177
Heated Wheel 111
Wheel Adjustment 111
Wheel Controls 111
Storage Areas
Armrest 108
Center Console 108
Glove Box 107
Instrument Panel 107
Storage Compartments 107
Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 319
Struts
Gas 277
Stuck Vehicle 186
Summer Tires 293
Sun Visors 52
Sunroof 52
Symbols 3
System
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) 232
Infotainment 157, 367
Systems
Driver Assistance 228

T

Tachometer 121
Text Telephone (TTY) Users 356
Theft-Deterrent Systems 47
  Immobilizer 47
Thigh Support Adjustment 60
Time 114
Tires 290
  All-Season 291
  Buying New Tires 306
  Chains 310
  Designations 295
  Different Size 307
  If a Tire Goes Flat 311
  Inspection 303
  Pressure 298, 299
  Pressure Light 131
  Pressure Monitor Operation 300
  Pressure Monitor System 299
  Rotation 303
  Run-Flat 292
  Sealant and Compressor Kit 312
  Sealant and Compressor Kit, Storing 319
  Self-Sealing 292
  Sidewall Labeling 293
  Terminology and Definitions 295
  Uniform Tire Quality Grading 307
Tires (cont'd)
  Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 309
  Wheel Replacement 309
  When It Is Time for New Tires 305
  Winter 291
Towing
  Driving Characteristics 244
  Equipment 248, 249
  General Information 244
  Recreational Vehicle 323
  Trailer 247–249
  Vehicle 322
Track Events and Competitive Driving 178
Traction
  Control System (TCS)/ StabiliTrak Light 130
  Limited-Slip Rear Axle 217
  Off Light 129
Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control 209
Trailer
  Towing 247–249
Transmission
  Automatic 199
  Fluid, Automatic 263
Transmission (cont'd)
  Fluid, Manual 263
Transportation Program, Courtesy 360
Trip Odometer 121
Trunk 43
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 153

U

Uniform Tire Quality Grading 307
Universal Remote System 146
  Operation 148
  Programming 146
Using This Manual 2

V

Vehicle
  Alarm System 45
  Canadian Owners 2
  Control 176
  Identification Number (VIN) 349
  Load Limits 186
  Messages 140
  Personalization 141
  Remote Start 37
  Security 45
  Speed Messages 141
  Towing 322
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 129

Vehicle Care
Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 319
Tire Pressure 298
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 365
Ventilation, Air 171
Visors 52

W

Warning
Brake System Light 127
Caution and Danger 3
Lane Departure (LDW) 238
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 117
Warnings
Hazard Flashers 153
Washer Fluid 271
Washer, Headlamps 113
Wheels
Alignment and Tire Balance 309
Different Size 307
Replacement 309
When It Is Time for New Tires 305
Where to Put the Restraint 94
Wi-Fi 371
Windows 49
Windows (cont'd)
Power 50
Windshield
Replacement 277
Wiper/Washer 112
Winter
Driving 184
Winter Tires 291
Wiper Blade Replacement 276
Wireless Charging 115

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-road vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

U.S. Only

23396040 B